

OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE, BID FORM  
and  
PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT

**\$4,550,000\***

**ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
*(Anderson and Houston Counties, Texas)*

**Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds**  
**Series 2019**

*Bids Due*  
*April 24, 2019*  
*at 10:00 a.m., Central Time*

---

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

*This Official Notice of Sale does not alone constitute an invitation for bids but is merely notice of sale of the Bonds defined and described herein. The invitation for bids on the Bonds is being made by means of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement.*

## OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE

**\$4,550,000\***

### ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Anderson and Houston Counties, Texas)

### UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019

#### THE SALE

**BONDS OFFERED FOR SALE AT COMPETITIVE BID:** The Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Elkhart Independent School District (the "District" or the "Issuer") is offering for sale at competitive bid its \$4,550,000\* Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds"). Bidders may submit bids for the Bonds by either of the following methods:

- (1) Submit bids electronically as described below in "BIDS BY INTERNET;" or
- (2) Submit bids by facsimile as described below in "BIDS BY FACSIMILE."

**BIDS BY INTERNET:** Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by electronic media, as described below, by 10:00 A.M., Central time, on April 24, 2019. Bidders submitting a bid by internet **shall not** be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit an electronic bid must submit its electronic bid via the facilities of the i-Deal, LLC Parity System ("PARITY") and should, as a courtesy, register with PARITY by 9:00 A.M., Central time, on April 24, 2019 indicating their intent to submit a bid by internet.

In the event of a malfunction in the electronic bidding process, bidders may submit their bids by facsimile, as described below. Any bid received after the scheduled time for their receipt will not be accepted.

The official time for the receipt of bids shall be the time maintained by PARITY. All electronic bids shall be deemed to incorporate the provisions of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement. To the extent that any instructions or directions set forth in PARITY conflict with this Official Notice of Sale, the terms of this Official Notice of Sale shall control. For further information about the PARITY System, potential bidders may contact i-Deal LLC at 1359 Broadway, 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10018, Telephone 212-849-5021.

An electronic bid made through the facilities of PARITY shall be deemed an irrevocable offer to purchase the Bonds on the terms provided in this Official Notice of Sale, and shall be binding upon the bidder as if made by a signed, sealed bid delivered to the Issuer. The Issuer shall not be responsible for any malfunction or mistake made by, or as a result of the use of PARITY, the use of such facilities being the sole risk of the prospective bidder.

**BIDS BY FACSIMILE:** Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by facsimile to the District's Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. Attention: Mr. Doug Whitt at (214) 279-8683 by 10:00 A.M., Central time, on April 24, 2019. Bidders submitting a bid by facsimile **shall not** be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit a bid by facsimile should, as a courtesy, submit an email message to [dwhitt@samcocapital.com](mailto:dwhitt@samcocapital.com) by 9:00 A.M., Central time, on April 24, 2019 indicating their intent to submit a bid by facsimile.

Neither the District nor SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is responsible for any failure of either of the Financial Advisor's or the bidder's fax machine. Bids received by facsimile after the bid deadline will not be accepted. Bidders who fax bids do so at their own risk. All such bids are binding on the bidder.

**PLACE AND TIME OF BID OPENING:** The bids for the Bonds will be opened at the District's offices at 10:00 A.M. Central time, on April 24, 2019.

**AWARD OF THE BONDS:** In the order authorizing the Bonds that was adopted on March 25, 2019 (the "Order"), the Board has delegated authority to certain District officials (each, a "Designated Financial Officer") the authority to execute a pricing certificate (the "Pricing Certificate") to establish the final terms and effectuate the sale of the Bonds, which terms will be evidenced in the Pricing Certificate. Upon the opening of the bids as described above, the Designated Financial Officer shall, within 24 hours of the opening of the bids, award the Bonds by executing the Official Bid Form and the Pricing Certificate. The District, acting through the Designated Financial Officer, reserves the right to reject any and all bids and to waive any irregularities except time of submission.

#### THE BONDS

**DESCRIPTION:** The Bonds will be dated May 1, 2019 (the "Dated Date"). Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date and will be due on August 15, 2019, and on each February 15 and August 15 thereafter until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered obligations in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository (the "Securities Depository"). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, the principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas as Paying Agent/Registrar, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its Participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

**MATURITY SCHEDULE:** The Bonds will be stated to mature on August 15 in each of the following years in the following amounts:

Maturity 8/15	Principal Amount*	Maturity 8/15	Principal Amount*	Maturity 8/15	Principal Amount*
2019	\$55,000	2026	\$200,000	2033	\$265,000
2020	145,000	2027	210,000	2034	260,000
2021	160,000	2028	215,000	2035	260,000
2022	160,000	2029	225,000	2036	270,000
2023	175,000	2030	235,000	2037	275,000
2024	180,000	2031	245,000	2038	280,000
2025	190,000	2032	255,000	2039	290,000

**ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS:** After selecting the winning bid, the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and the principal amortization schedule may be adjusted as determined by the District and its Financial Advisor in \$5,000 increments to reflect the actual interest rates and to create a substantially level debt service schedule for the District. Such adjustments will not change the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds by more than 10% from the amount set forth herein or change the principal amount due on the Bonds in any year by more than 20% (excluding the 2019 maturity). The dollar amount bid for the Bonds by the winning bidder will be adjusted proportionately to reflect any increase or decrease in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds finally determined to be issued. The District will use its best efforts to communicate to the winning bidder any such adjustment within four (4) hours after the opening of the bids. Purchaser's compensation will be based upon the final par amount after any adjustment thereto, subsequent to the receipt and tabulation of the winning bid, within the aforementioned parameters.

In the event of any adjustment of the maturity schedule for the Bonds as described above, no rebidding or recalculation of the proposals submitted will be required or permitted. Any such adjustment of the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and/or the maturity schedule for the Bonds made by the District or its Financial Advisor shall be subsequent to the award of the Bonds to the winning bidder as determined pursuant to "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE – BASIS OF AWARD" herein and shall not affect such determination. The winning bidder may not withdraw its bid as a result of any changes made within the aforementioned limits.

**SERIAL BONDS AND/OR TERM BONDS:** Bidders may provide that all of the Bonds be issued as serial maturities or may provide that maturities 2029 through 2039 be combined into one or more term bonds (the "Term Bonds").

**MANDATORY SINKING FUND REDEMPTION:** If the successful bidder designates principal amounts of the Bonds to be combined into one or more Term Bonds, each such Term Bond will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption commencing on August 15 of the first year which has been combined to form such Term Bond and continuing on August 15 in each year thereafter until the stated maturity date of that Term Bond. The amount redeemed in any year will be equal to the principal amount for such year set forth in the table above under the caption "MATURITY SCHEDULE" (subject to adjustment, as provided in "ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS"). Term Bonds to be redeemed in any year by mandatory sinking fund redemption will be redeemed at par and will be selected by lot from among the Term Bonds then subject to redemption. The District, at its option, may credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement Term Bonds of the maturity then subject to redemption which at least 50 days prior to a mandatory redemption date have been purchased and canceled by the District or have been redeemed and not theretofore applied as a credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement.

**OPTIONAL REDEMPTION:** The District reserves the right to redeem the Bonds maturing on or after August 15, 2029 in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at the redemption price of par, plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption.

**QUALIFIED TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS:** The District will designate the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" for financial institutions. (See "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" in the Official Statement.)

**AUTHORITY FOR ISSUANCE AND SECURITY FOR PAYMENT:** The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including, particularly, Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, as amended, and the Order that was adopted on March 25, 2019. The Bonds are direct obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from ad valorem taxes to be levied annually on all taxable property within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. (See "THE BONDS – Security" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE:** The District has applied for and received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR:** The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to provide a Paying Agent/Registrar at all times while the Bonds are outstanding, and any Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States and any state and duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. The Paying Agent/Registrar will maintain the Security Register containing the names and addresses of the registered owners of the Bonds.

In the Order the District retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the District, such Paying Agent/Registrar, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, is required to deliver the Security Register to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

In the event there is a change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the District has agreed to notify each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at the address in the Security Register, stating the effective date of the change and the mailing address of the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

**BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM:** The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of DTC with respect to the issuance of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.

**OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND OTHER TERMS AND COVENANTS IN THE ORDER:** Further details regarding the Bonds and certain covenants of the District contained in the Order are set forth in the Preliminary Official Statement, to which reference is made for all purposes.

## CONDITIONS OF THE SALE

**TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES:** The Bonds will be sold in one block, on an "All or None" basis, and at a price of not less than their par value, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from the Dated Date of the Bonds to the date of Initial Delivery (defined herein) of the Bonds. **No bid producing a cash premium on the Bonds that results in a dollar price of less than \$104.50 nor greater than \$110.00 will be considered; provided, however, that any bid is subject to adjustment as described under the caption "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS."** Bidders are invited to name the rate(s) of interest to be borne by the Bonds, provided that each rate bid must be in a multiple of 1/8 of 1% or 1/20 of 1% and the net effective interest rate for the Bonds (calculated in the manner required by Chapter 1204, as amended, Texas Government Code) must not exceed 15%. **The highest rate bid may not exceed the lowest rate bid by more than 300 basis points (or 3.00% in rate). No limitation is imposed upon bidders as to the number of rates or changes which may be used.** All Bonds of one stated maturity must bear one and the same rate. No bids involving supplemental interest rates will be considered.

**BASIS OF AWARD:** The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein and which produces the **lowest True Interest Cost (defined herein) rate on the Bonds to the District.** The "True Interest Cost" rate is that rate which, when used to compute the total present value as of the **Dated Date** of all debt service payments on the Bonds on the basis of semi-annual compounding, produces an amount equal to the sum of the par value of the Bonds plus the premium bid (but not interest accrued from the Dated Date to the date of their Initial Delivery). In the event of a bidder's error in interest cost rate calculations, the interest rates, and premium set forth in the Official Bid Form will be considered as the intended bid.

In order to provide the District with information required to enable it to comply with certain conditions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code") relating to the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from the gross income of their owners, the Purchaser (as defined herein) will be required to complete, execute, and deliver to the District (on or before the date of Initial Delivery of the Bonds) a certification as to their "issue price" (the "Issue Price Certificate") in the form and to the effect attached hereto or accompanying this Official Notice of Sale. In the event the successful bidder is unable to sell a substantial amount of the Bonds of any maturity to the public at the initial offering price, the Issue Price Certificate may be modified in a manner approved by the District. Each bidder, by submitting its bid, agrees to complete, execute, and deliver the Issue Price Certificate by the date of Initial Delivery of the Bonds, if its bid is accepted by the District. It will be the responsibility of the Purchaser to institute such syndicate reporting requirements, to make such investigation, or otherwise to ascertain the facts necessary to enable it to make such certification with reasonable certainty. Any questions concerning such certification should be directed to Bond Counsel (identified in the Preliminary Official Statement).

### ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE:

(a) The winning bidder shall assist the District in establishing the issue price of the Bonds and shall execute and deliver to the District by the date of Initial Delivery an "issue price" or similar certificate setting forth the reasonably expected initial offering price to the public, together with the supporting pricing wires or equivalent communications, such issue price certificate substantially in the form attached hereto, with such modifications as may be appropriate or necessary, in the reasonable judgment of the winning bidder, the District, and Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, the District's Bond Counsel (but not to the extent that would preclude the establishment of issue price of the Bonds under applicable federal regulations). All actions to be taken by the District under this Official Notice of Sale to establish the issue price of the Bonds may be taken on behalf of the District by the District's Financial Advisor and any notice or report to be provided to the District may be provided to the District's Financial Advisor.

(b) The District intends that the provisions of Treasury Regulation Section 1.148-1(f)(3)(i) (defining "competitive sale" for purposes of establishing the issue price of the Bonds) will apply to the initial sale of the Bonds (the "competitive sale requirements") because:

- (1) the District shall disseminate this Official Notice of Sale to potential underwriters (defined below) in a manner that is reasonably designed to reach potential underwriters;
- (2) all bidders shall have an equal opportunity to bid;
- (3) the District may receive bids from at least three underwriters of municipal bonds who have established industry reputations for underwriting new issuances of municipal bonds; and
- (4) the District anticipates awarding the sale of the Bonds to the bidder who submits a firm offer to purchase the Bonds at the highest price (or lowest interest cost), as set forth in this Official Notice of Sale.

Any bid submitted pursuant to this Official Notice of Sale shall be considered a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds, as specified in the bid.

(c) In the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, the District shall so advise the winning bidder. In such event, the District intends to treat the initial offering price to the public (defined below) as of the sale date (defined below) of each maturity of the Bonds as the issue price of that maturity (the "hold-the-offering-price rule"). The District shall promptly advise the winning bidder, at or before the time of award of the Bonds, if the competitive sale requirements were not satisfied, in which case the hold-the-offering-price rule shall apply to the Bonds. **Bids will not be subject to cancellation in the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied and the hold-the-offering-price rule applies.** In the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, resulting in the application of the hold-the-offering price rule, the issue price certificate shall be modified as necessary in the reasonable judgment of Bond Counsel and the District.

(d) By submitting a bid, the winning bidder shall (i) confirm that the underwriters have offered or will offer the Bonds to the public on or before the date of award at the offering price or prices (the "initial offering price"), or at the corresponding yield or yields,

set forth in the bid submitted by the winning bidder and (ii) agree, on behalf of the underwriters participating in the purchase of the Bonds, that the underwriters will neither offer nor sell unsold Bonds of any maturity to which the hold-the-offering-price rule applies to any person at a price that is higher than the initial offering price to the public during the period starting on the sale date and ending on the earlier of the following:

- (1) the close of the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) business day after the sale date; or
- (2) the date on which the underwriters have sold at least 10% of that maturity of the Bonds to the public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the public.

The winning bidder shall promptly advise the District when the underwriters have sold 10% of that maturity of the Bonds to the public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the public, if that occurs prior to the close of the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) business day after the sale date.

(e) The District acknowledges that, in making the representation set forth above, the winning bidder will rely on (i) the agreement of each underwriter to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in an agreement among underwriters and the related pricing wires, (ii) in the event a selling group has been created in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, the agreement of each dealer who is a member of the selling group to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in a selling group agreement and the related pricing wires, and (iii) in the event that an underwriter is a party to a third-party distribution agreement that was employed in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, the agreement of each broker-dealer that is a party to such agreement to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in the third-party distribution agreement and the related pricing wires. The District further acknowledges that each underwriter shall be solely liable for its failure to comply with its agreement regarding the hold-the-offering-price rule and that no underwriter shall be liable for the failure of any other underwriter, or of any dealer who is a member of a selling group, or of any broker-dealer that is a party to a third-party distribution agreement to comply with its corresponding agreement regarding the hold-the-offering-price rule as applicable to the Bonds.

(f) By submitting a bid, each bidder confirms that: (i) any agreement among underwriters, any selling group agreement and each third-party distribution agreement (to which the bidder is a party) relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter, each dealer who is a member of the selling group, and each broker-dealer that is a party to such third-party distribution agreement, as applicable, to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, if applicable, in each case if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder and as set forth in the related pricing wires, and (ii) any agreement among underwriters relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter that is a party to a third-party distribution agreement to be employed in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the public to require each broker-dealer that is a party to such third-party distribution agreement to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, if applicable, in each case if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder or such underwriter and as set forth in the related pricing wires.

(g) Sales of any Bonds to any person that is a related party (defined below) to an underwriter shall not constitute sales to the public for purposes of this Official Notice of Sale. Further, for purposes of this section of the Official Notice of Sale entitled "ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE":

- (1) "public" means any person other than an underwriter or a related party,
- (2) "underwriter" means (A) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the District (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the public and (B) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (A) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a third-party distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the public),
- (3) a purchaser of any of the Bonds is a "related party" to an underwriter if the underwriter and the purchaser are subject, directly or indirectly, to (i) more than 50% common ownership of the voting power or the total value of their stock, if both entities are corporations (including direct ownership by one corporation of another), (ii) more than 50% common ownership of their capital interests or profits interests, if both entities are partnerships (including direct ownership by one partnership of another), or (iii) more than 50% common ownership of the value of the outstanding stock of the corporation or the capital interests or profit interests of the partnership, as applicable, if one entity is a corporation and the other entity is a partnership (including direct ownership of the applicable stock or interests by one entity of the other), and
- (4) "sale date" means the date that the Bonds are awarded by the District to the winning bidder.

**GOOD FAITH DEPOSIT:** A bank cashier's check, payable to the order of "Elkhart Independent School District", in the amount of \$91,000 which is 2% of the proposed par value of the Bonds (the "Good Faith Deposit"), is required to accompany any bid. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be retained uncashed by the District pending the Purchaser's compliance with the terms of its bid and this Official Notice of Sale. In the event the Purchaser should fail or refuse to take up and pay for the Bonds in accordance with its bid, then said check shall be cashed and accepted by the District as full and complete liquidated damages. The Good Faith Deposit may accompany the Official Bid Form or it may be submitted separately; however, if submitted separately, it shall be made available to the District prior to the opening of the bids, and shall be accompanied by instructions from the bank on which it is drawn which authorizes its use as a Good Faith Deposit by the Purchaser who shall be named in such instructions. **The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery.** No interest will be allowed on the Good Faith Deposit. Checks accompanying bids other than the winning bid will be returned promptly after the bids are opened, and an award of the Bonds has been made by the District.

**ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD — DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTY FORM:**

Obligation of the District to receive information from winning bidder if bidder is not a publicly traded business entity (a "Privately Held Bidder"). Pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2252.908 (the "Interested Party Disclosure Act"), the District may not award the Bonds to a winning bidder which is a Privately Held Bidder unless such party submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") to the District as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission ("TEC"). In the event that a Privately Held Bidder's bid for the Bonds is the best bid received, the District, acting through its financial advisor, will promptly notify the winning Privately Held Bidder. That notification will serve as the District's conditional verbal acceptance of the bid, and will obligate the winning Privately Held Bidder to establish (unless such winning Privately Held Bidder has previously so established) an account with the TEC, and promptly file a completed Disclosure Form, as described below, in order to allow the District to complete the award.

Process for completing the Disclosure Form. For purposes of illustration, the Disclosure Form is attached hereto, and reference should be made to such form for the following information needed to complete it: (a) item 2 – name of the governmental entity (Elkhart Independent School District) and (b) item 3 – the identification number assigned to this contract by the District (0001) and description of the goods or services (Purchase of the Elkhart Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019). The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the rules adopted by the TEC with respect thereto (the “Disclosure Rules”) require a non-publicly traded business entity contracting with the District to complete the Disclosure Form electronically at <https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/main/file.htm>, print, sign, and deliver, in physical form, the certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC’s “electronic portal” to the District. The Disclosure Form must be sent by email, to the District’s financial advisor at [dwhitt@samcocapital.com](mailto:dwhitt@samcocapital.com), as soon as possible following the notification of conditional verbal acceptance and prior to the final written award. Upon receipt of the final written award, the Disclosure Form with original signatures must be submitted by mail to Kristen Savant, c/o Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, 2200 Ross Avenue, Suite 3600, Dallas, Texas 75201, along with a PDF version sent to [kristen.savant@nortonrosefulbright.com](mailto:kristen.savant@nortonrosefulbright.com).

Preparations for completion, and the significance of, the reported information. In accordance with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the information reported by the winning Privately Held Bidder must be declared by an authorized agent of the Privately Held Winning Bidder. No exceptions may be made to that requirement. The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the Disclosure Form provides that such acknowledgment is made “under penalty of perjury.” Consequently, a winning Privately Held Bidder should take appropriate steps prior to completion of the Disclosure Form to familiarize itself with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the Disclosure Rules and the Disclosure Form. Time will be of the essence in submitting the form to the District, and no final award will be made by the District regarding the sale of the Bonds until a completed Disclosure Form is received. If applicable, the District reserves the right to reject any bid that does not satisfy the requirement of a completed Disclosure Form, as described herein. Neither the District nor its consultants have the ability to verify the information included in a Disclosure Form, and neither party has an obligation nor undertakes responsibility for advising any bidder with respect to (1) the bidder’s obligation to submit the Disclosure Form or (2) the proper completion of the Disclosure Form. Consequently, an entity intending to bid on the Bonds should consult its own advisors to the extent it deems necessary and be prepared to submit the completed form, if required, promptly upon notification from the District that its bid is the conditional winning bid. Instructional videos on logging in and creating a certificate are provided on the TEC’s website at [https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf\\_info\\_form1295.htm](https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm).

**ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD – COMPLIANCE WITH H.B. 89 AND S.B. 252, 85TH TEXAS LEGISLATURE:**

Each bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, hereby verifies that it and its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates, if any, do not boycott Israel and, to the extent this Notice of Sale and Official Bid Form is a contract for goods or services, will not boycott Israel during the term of this agreement. The foregoing verification is made solely to comply with Section 2270.002, Texas Government Code, and to the extent such Section does not contravene applicable Federal law. As used in the foregoing verification, ‘boycott Israel’ means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes. Each bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, understands ‘affiliate’ to mean an entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with the bidder and exists to make a profit.

Each bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, hereby represents that neither it nor any of its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates is a company identified on a list prepared and maintained by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts under Section 2252.153 or Section 2270.0201, Texas Government Code, and posted on any of the following pages of such officer’s internet website:

<https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/sudan-list.pdf>,  
<https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/iran-list.pdf>, or  
<https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/fto-list.pdf>.

The foregoing representation is made solely to comply with Section 2252.152, Texas Government Code, and to the extent such Section does not contravene applicable Federal law and excludes the bidder and each of its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates, if any, that the United States government has affirmatively declared to be excluded from its federal sanctions regime relating to Sudan or Iran or any federal sanctions regime relating to a foreign terrorist organization. Each bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, understands “affiliate” to mean any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with the bidder and exists to make a profit.

**IMPACT OF BIDDING SYNDICATE ON AWARD:** For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

**OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

To assist the winning bidder (the “Purchaser” or “Initial Purchaser”) in complying with Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the “Rule”), of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”), the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser contract and agree, by the submission and acceptance of the winning bid, as follows:

**COMPLIANCE WITH RULE 15c2-12 OF THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION:** The Issuer has approved and authorized distribution of the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement for dissemination to potential purchasers of the Bonds, but does not presently intend to prepare any other document or version thereof for such purpose, except as described below. Accordingly, the Issuer deems the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement to be “final” as of its date, within the meaning of the Rule, except for information relating to the offering prices, interest rates, final debt service schedule, selling compensation, identity of the Purchaser and other similar information, terms and provisions to be specified in the competitive bidding process. The Initial Purchaser shall be responsible for promptly informing the Issuer of the initial offering yields of the Bonds.

Thereafter, the Issuer will complete and authorize distribution of the final Official Statement, being a modification of the Preliminary Official Statement, identifying the Initial Purchaser and containing such omitted information. The Issuer does not intend to amend or supplement the Official Statement otherwise, except to take into account certain subsequent events, if any, as described below. By delivering the final Official Statement or any amendment or supplement thereto in the requested quantity to the Initial Purchaser on or after the sale date, the Issuer intends the same to be final as of such date, within the meaning of the Rule. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Issuer makes no representation concerning the absence of material misstatements or omissions from the Official Statement, except only as and to the extent under “CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT” as described below.

**FINAL OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** The Issuer will furnish to the Purchaser, within seven (7) business days after the sale date, an aggregate maximum of one hundred (100) copies of the Official Statement, together with information regarding interest rates, and other terms relating to the reoffering of the Bonds. In addition, the District agrees to provide, or cause to be provided, to the Purchaser, the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Statement and any amendments or supplements thereto in a "designated electronic format" (or printed format with respect to the final Official Statement) as may be required for the Purchaser to comply with the Rule or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The District consents to the distribution of such documents in a "designated electronic format." Upon receipt, the Purchaser shall promptly file the Official Statement with the MSRB in accordance with MSRB Rule G-32. The Purchaser may arrange at its own expense to have the Official Statement reproduced and printed if it requires more copies and may also arrange, at its own expense and responsibility, for completion and perfection of the first or cover page of the Official Statement so as to reflect interest rates and other terms and information related to the reoffering of the Bonds. The Purchaser will be responsible for providing information concerning the Issuer and the Bonds to subsequent purchasers of the Bonds, and the Issuer will undertake no responsibility for providing such information other than to make the Official Statement available to the Purchaser as provided herein. The Issuer's obligation to supplement the Official Statement to correct key representations determined to be omitted or materially misleading after the date of the Official Statement shall terminate 25 days after the sale date.

**CHANGES TO OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** If, subsequent to the date of the Official Statement, the Issuer learns, through the ordinary course of business and without undertaking any investigation or examination for such purposes, or is notified by the Initial Purchaser of any adverse event which causes the Official Statement to be incomplete or materially misleading, and unless the Initial Purchaser elects to terminate its obligation to purchase the Bonds, as described below under "DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS – CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY," the Issuer will promptly prepare and supply to the Initial Purchaser an appropriate amendment or supplement to the Official Statement, in a "designated electronic format" satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser.

**CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** At the time of payment for and delivery of the hereinafter defined Initial Bonds ("Initial Delivery"), the Initial Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the Issuer, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the Issuer contained in the Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the Initial Delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the Issuer and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the Issuer, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the Issuer believes to be reliable and the Issuer has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; and (d) there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the Issuer, since August 31, 2018, the date of the last financial statements of the Issuer appearing in the Official Statement.

**CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT:** The District has agreed in the Order to provide certain periodic information and notices of certain events in accordance with the Rule, as described in the Official Statement under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION". The Purchaser's obligation to accept and pay for the Bonds is conditioned upon delivery to the Purchaser or its agent of a certified copy of the Order containing the agreement described under such heading.

**COMPLIANCE WITH PRIOR UNDERTAKINGS:** During the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule.

## **DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS**

**INITIAL DELIVERY OF INITIAL BOND:** Initial Delivery will be accomplished by the issuance of one or more fully registered Bonds in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds payable to the Purchaser (the "Initial Bond" or "Initial Bonds"), signed by the duly appointed officers of the Board, by their manual or facsimile signatures, approved by the Texas Attorney General, and registered and manually signed by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts. Initial Delivery will be at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. Upon delivery of the Initial Bonds, they shall be immediately canceled and one definitive Bond for each maturity of the Bonds payable to Cede & Co. will be delivered to DTC in connection with DTC's Book-Entry-Only System. Payment for the Bonds must be made in immediately available funds for unconditional credit to the District, or as otherwise directed by the District. The Purchaser will be given six business days' notice of the time fixed for delivery of the Bonds. It is anticipated that the delivery of the Initial Bond can be made on or about May 21, 2019, but if for any reason the District is unable to make delivery by June 18, 2019, then the District shall immediately contact the Purchaser and offer to allow the Purchaser to extend its obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds an additional thirty days. If the Purchaser does not elect to extend its offer within six days thereafter, then its Good Faith Deposit will be returned, and both the District and the Purchaser shall be relieved of any further obligation. In no event shall the District be liable for any damages by reason of its failure to deliver the Bonds, provided that such failure is due to circumstances beyond the District's reasonable control.

**CUSIP NUMBERS:** It is anticipated that CUSIP identification numbers will be printed on the Bonds, but neither the failure to print such number on any Bond nor any error with respect thereto shall constitute cause for a failure or refusal by the Initial Purchaser to accept delivery of and pay for the Bonds in accordance with the terms of the Official Bid Form and this Official Notice of Sale. All expenses in relation to the printing of CUSIP numbers on the Bonds shall be paid by the Issuer; however, the CUSIP Service Bureau's charge for the assignment of the numbers shall be paid by the Initial Purchaser.

**CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY:** The obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds is subject to the following conditions: the issuance of an approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, the Initial Purchaser's receipt of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel and the certificate regarding the Official Statement, and the non-occurrence of the events described below under the caption "NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE". In addition, if the Issuer fails to comply with its obligations described under "OFFICIAL STATEMENT" above, the Initial Purchaser may terminate its contract to purchase the Bonds by delivering written notice to the Issuer within five (5) days thereafter.

**NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE:** The obligations of the Initial Purchaser to take up and pay for the Bonds, and of the Issuer to deliver the Initial Bonds, are subject to the condition that, up to the time of delivery of and receipt of payment for the Initial Bonds, there shall have been no material adverse change in the affairs of the Issuer subsequent to the date of sale from that set forth in the Official Statement, as it may have been finalized, supplemented or amended through the date of Initial Delivery.

**LEGAL OPINIONS:** The District will furnish the Purchaser a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas as to the Bonds, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of Bond Counsel, regarding the legality and validity of the Bonds issued in compliance with the provisions of the Order. (See "LITIGATION" and "LEGAL MATTERS" in the Official Statement and "Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel" attached to the Official Statement.)

**CHANGE IN TAX-EXEMPT STATUS:** At any time before the Bonds are tendered for initial delivery to the Initial Purchaser, the Initial Purchaser may withdraw its bid if the interest on obligations such as the Bonds shall be declared to be includable in the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, either by Treasury regulations, by ruling or administrative guidance of the Internal Revenue Service, by a decision of any federal court, or by the terms of any federal income tax legislation enacted subsequent to the date of this Official Notice of Sale.

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

**RATING:** The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"), based upon the Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program. The District's current unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "A+" by S&P. There is no assurance that such rating will continue for any given period of time or that it will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by such rating company, if in the judgment of said rating company, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such rating, or either of them, may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

**REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE:** No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon exemptions provided in such Act. The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The Issuer assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The Issuer agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and expense and within reasonable limits, in registering or qualifying the Bonds, or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary, but the District will in no instance execute a general consent to service of process in any state in which the Bonds are offered for sale.

**ADDITIONAL COPIES:** Subject to the limitations described herein, additional copies of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Official Statement may be obtained from SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024.

In the Order, the Board has delegated to the Designated Financial Officer the authority to approve the form and content of the Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, and the Board has authorized its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

Kevin Bush

\_\_\_\_\_  
President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

Krispen Rucker

\_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary, Board of Trustees

Dated: April 17, 2019



**OFFICIAL BID FORM**

President and Board of Trustees  
 Elkhart Independent School District  
 301 East Parker  
 Elkhart, Texas 75839

April 24, 2019

Ladies & Gentlemen:

Reference is made to your Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement dated April 17, 2019 of \$4,550,000\* ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019 (the "Bonds"), both of which constitute a part hereof.

For your legally issued Bonds, as described in said Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement, we will pay you a price of par value thereof plus accrued interest from their Dated Date to the date of delivery to us, plus a cash premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (no bid producing a cash premium that results in a dollar price of less than \$104.50 nor greater than \$110.00 will be considered) for Bonds maturing and bearing interest as follows:

Maturity (8/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate	Maturity (8/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate
2019	\$55,000	_____	2030	\$235,000	_____
2020	145,000	_____	2031	245,000	_____
2021	160,000	_____	2032	255,000	_____
2022	160,000	_____	2033	265,000	_____
2023	175,000	_____	2034	260,000	_____
2024	180,000	_____	2035	260,000	_____
2025	190,000	_____	2036	270,000	_____
2026	200,000	_____	2037	275,000	_____
2027	210,000	_____	2038	280,000	_____
2028	215,000	_____	2039	290,000	_____
2029	225,000	_____			

(Interest to Accrue from the Dated Date)

Of the principal maturities of the Bonds set forth in the table above, we have created term bonds (the "Term Bonds") as indicated in the following table (which may include multiple Term Bonds, one Term Bond or no Term Bond if none is indicated). For those years which have been combined into a Term Bond, the principal amount shown in the table above will be the mandatory sinking fund redemption amounts in such years except that the amount shown in the year of the Term Bond maturity date will mature in such year. The Term Bonds created are as follows:

Term Bond Maturity Date	Year of First Mandatory Redemption	Principal Amount of Term Bond	Interest Rate
August 15	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

Our calculation (which is not a part of this bid) of the interest cost in accordance with the above bid is:

TRUE INTEREST COST \_\_\_\_\_ %

By accepting this bid, we understand the District will provide the copies of the Official Statement and of any amendments or supplements thereto in accordance with the Official Notice of Sale.

The Initial Bond(s) shall be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_ (Purchaser). We will advise DTC of registration instructions at least five business days prior to the date set for Initial Delivery. It is the obligation of the Purchaser of the Bonds to complete the DTC Eligibility Questionnaire.

Cashier's Check of the \_\_\_\_\_ (bank), \_\_\_\_\_ (location), in the amount of \$91,000 which represents our Good Faith Deposit is attached hereto or has been made available to you prior to the opening of the bid, in accordance with the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale and the Preliminary Official Statement. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery upon completion of the closing.

We agree to accept delivery of the Initial Bond(s) through DTC and make payment for the Initial Bond(s) in immediately available funds at BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, no later than 10:00 A.M., Central time, on May 21, 2019 or thereafter on the date the Initial Bond(s) are tendered for delivery, pursuant to the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale.

The undersigned agrees to complete, execute and deliver to the District by the date of delivery of the Bonds, a certificate relating to the "issue price" of the Bonds in the form and to the effect attached to or accompanying the Official Notice of Sale, with such changes thereto as may be acceptable to or required by the District.

The Issuer will consider any bid submitted pursuant to the Notice of Sale relating to the Bonds to be a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds.

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions.

The undersigned agrees to the provisions of the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" and, as evidence thereof agrees to complete, execute and deliver to the District by the date of delivery of the Bonds, a certificate relating to the "issue price" of the Bonds in the form and to the effect attached to or accompanying the Official Notice of Sale, with such changes thereto as may be acceptable to or required by the District (as provided under "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE – ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" in the Official Notice of Sale).

Through submittal of this executed Official Bid Form, the undersigned verifies that it does not and will not "boycott Israel" and is not on the Texas Comptroller's list concerning "foreign terrorist organizations" as prepared and maintained thereby under applicable Texas law, all as more fully provided in the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD – COMPLIANCE WITH H.B. 89 AND S.B. 252, 85th TEXAS LEGISLATURE".

For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

Upon notification of conditional verbal acceptance, the undersigned, if required, will complete an electronic form of the Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") through the Texas Ethics Commission's (the "TEC") electronic portal and the resulting certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's electronic portal will be printed, signed, notarized and sent by email to the District's financial advisor at [dwhitt@samcocapital.com](mailto:dwhitt@samcocapital.com). The undersigned understands that the failure to provide the certified Disclosure Form will prohibit the District from providing final written award of the enclosed bid.

Respectfully submitted,

---

(Purchaser)

---

(Signature - Title)

---

(Telephone)

[District signature page follows.]

**ACCEPTANCE CLAUSE**

THE FOREGOING BID IS IN ALL THINGS HEREBY ACCEPTED this April 24, 2019 by a Designated Financial Official of the District by authority conveyed in the Order of the Board of Trustees of the ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT adopted on March 25, 2019.

---

Designated Financial Official

# CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES

FORM 1295

1 of 1

Complete Nos. 1 - 4 and 6 if there are interested parties.  
 Complete Nos. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 if there are no interested parties.

**OFFICE USE ONLY  
 CERTIFICATION OF FILING**

**1 Name of business entity filing form, and the city, state and country of the business entity's place of business.**

**2 ~~Name of governmental entity or state agency that is a party to the contract for which the form is being filed.~~**

Elkhart Independent School District

**3 Provide the identification number used by the governmental entity or state agency to track or identify the contract, and provide a description of the services, goods, or other property to be provided under the contract.**

0001

Purchase of the Elkhart Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019

4	Name of Interested Party	City, State, Country (place of business)	Nature of interest (check applicable)	
			Controlling	Intermediary

**5 Check only if there is NO Interested Party.**

**6 UNSWORN DECLARATION**

My name is \_\_\_\_\_, and my date of birth is \_\_\_\_\_.

My address is \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.  
(street) (city) (state) (zip code) (country)

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed in \_\_\_\_\_ County, State of \_\_\_\_\_, on the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.  
(month) (year)

\_\_\_\_\_  
 Signature of authorized agent of contracting business entity  
 (Declarant)

**\$4,550,000<sup>1</sup>**  
**ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

**ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE**

The undersigned, on behalf of [NAME OF UNDERWRITER] (the “Purchaser”), hereby certifies as set forth below with respect to the sale of the above-captioned obligations (the “Bonds”) of Elkhart Independent School District (the “Issuer”).

1. ***Reasonably Expected Initial Offering Price.***

(a) As of the Sale Date, the reasonably expected initial offering prices of the Bonds to the Public by the Purchaser are the prices listed in Schedule A (the “Expected Offering Prices”). The Expected Offering Prices are the prices for the Maturities of the Bonds used by the Purchaser in formulating its bid to purchase the Bonds. Attached as Schedule B is a true and correct copy of the bid provided by the Purchaser to purchase the Bonds.

(b) The Purchaser was not given the opportunity to review other bids prior to submitting its bid.

(c) The bid submitted by the Purchaser constituted a firm offer to purchase the Bonds.

2. ***Defined Terms.***

(a) *Maturity* means Bonds with the same credit and payment terms. Bonds with different maturity dates, or Bonds with the same maturity date but different stated interest rates, are treated as separate Maturities.

(b) *Public* means any person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter or a related party to an Underwriter. The term “related party” for purposes of this certificate generally means any two or more persons who have greater than 50 percent common ownership, directly or indirectly.

(c) *Sale Date* means the first day on which there is a binding contract in writing for the sale of a Maturity of the Bonds. The Sale Date of the Bonds is April 24, 2019.

(d) *Underwriter* means (i) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, and (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (i) of this paragraph to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail or other third-party distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public).

The representations set forth in this certificate are limited to factual matters only. Nothing in this certificate represents the Purchaser’s interpretation of any laws, including specifically Sections 103 and 148 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the Treasury Regulations thereunder. The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the tax certificate with respect to the Bonds and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Bonds, and by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP

---

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary, subject to change.

in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Bonds.

[NAME OF UNDERWRITER]

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, 2019

**SCHEDULE A**  
**EXPECTED OFFERING PRICES**  
*(Attached)*

**SCHEDULE B**  
**COPY OF UNDERWRITER'S BID**  
*(Attached)*



**PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

**Dated: April 17, 2019**

**NEW ISSUE: BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY**

*In the opinion of Bond Counsel (defined below), assuming continuing compliance by the District (defined below) after the date of initial delivery of the Bonds (defined below) with certain covenants contained in the Order (defined below) and subject to the matters set forth under "TAX MATTERS" herein, interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date of initial delivery of the Bonds, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. See "TAX MATTERS" herein.*

*The Bonds will be designated by the District as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions.*

**\$4,550,000\***

**ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Anderson and Houston Counties, Texas)**

**Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019**

**Dated Date: May 1, 2019**

**Due: August 15, as shown on the inside cover page**

The Elkhart Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including Chapter 1207, as amended, Texas Government Code ("Chapter 1207") and an order (the "Order") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds adopted on March 25, 2019 by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Elkhart Independent School District (the "District"). As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1207, the Board, in the Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds. The Bonds are payable as to principal and interest from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied annually, without legal limit as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date specified above and will be payable on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing August 15, 2019, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in principal denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity. Principal of the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, which initially is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar") upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds for payment. Interest on the Bonds is payable by check dated as of the interest payment date and mailed by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners as shown on the records of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the close of business as of the last business day of the month next preceding each interest payment date (the "Record Date").

The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"). Such Book-Entry-Only System will affect the method and timing of payment and the method of transfer of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM").

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) refund a portion of the District's outstanding bonds (the "Refunded Bonds") for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "PLAN OF FINANCING - Purpose", "PLAN OF FINANCING - Refunded Bonds" and "Schedule I – Schedule of Refunded Bonds").

The Bonds maturing on or after August 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. Additionally, the Purchaser (as defined below) may select certain maturities of the Bonds to be grouped together as a term bond, and such term bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Optional Redemption" and "THE BONDS – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption").

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**

(On Inside Cover)

*The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued, and received by the initial purchaser (the "Purchaser") subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel. The Bonds are expected to be available for initial delivery through the services of DTC on or about May 21, 2019.*

**BIDS DUE APRIL 24, 2019 BY 10:00 A.M., CENTRAL TIME**

\*Preliminary, subject to change.

**\$4,550,000\***  
**ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Anderson and Houston Counties, Texas)**  
**UNLIMITED TAX REFUNDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**  
Base CUSIP No.: 287677 <sup>(1)</sup>

<b>Maturity Date 8/15</b>	<b>Principal Amount*</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Initial Yield</b>	<b>CUSIP No. Suffix<sup>(1)</sup></b>
2019	\$55,000			
2020	145,000			
2021	160,000			
2022	160,000			
2023	175,000			
2024	180,000			
2025	190,000			
2026	200,000			
2027	210,000			
2028	215,000			
2029	225,000			
2030	235,000			
2031	245,000			
2032	255,000			
2033	265,000			
2034	260,000			
2035	260,000			
2036	270,000			
2037	275,000			
2038	280,000			
2039	290,000			

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

*\*Preliminary, subject to change.*

*<sup>(1)</sup> CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.*

# ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

## BOARD OF TRUSTEES

<u>Name</u>	<u>Date Initially Elected</u>	<u>Current Term Expires</u>	<u>Occupation</u>
Kevin Bush, President	2012	2021	Telephone Technician
Harold Holloway, Vice President	2010	2019	Communications Manager / AT&T
Krispen Rucker, Secretary	2014	2020	Realtor
Paul Barnett, Member	2010	2019	Salesman – Wilson Culverts
Joe Estes, Member	2011	2020	DOT Compliance
Charles McShan, Member	2009	2021	Pastor / Retired Postmaster
Chad Steely, Member	2016	2019	EMT - Instructor

## APPOINTED OFFICIALS

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Length of Education Service</u>	<u>Length of Service with the District</u>
Dr. Lamont Smith	Superintendent	21 Years	7 Months
Rhonda Brewer	Business Manager	19 Years	19 Years

## CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Dallas, Texas	Bond Counsel
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Plano, Texas	Financial Advisor
Smith, Lambright & Associates, P.C., Athens, Texas	Certified Public Accountants

For additional information, contact:

Dr. Lamont Smith  
Superintendent  
Elkhart ISD  
301 East Parker  
Elkhart, Texas 75839  
(903) 764-8547

Doug Whitt / Brian Grubbs / Robert White  
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.  
5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210  
Plano, Texas 75024  
(214) 765-1469  
(214) 279-8683 (Fax)

## USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT

For purposes of compliance with Rule 15c2-12 of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, as amended ("Rule 15c2-12"), and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "official statement" of the District with respect to the Bonds that has been deemed "final" by the District as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by Rule 15c2-12.

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page, Schedule I and the Appendices hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized to give information or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District and other sources believed to be reliable, but such information is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as the promise or guarantee of the Purchaser or the Financial Advisor. This Official Statement contains, in part, estimates and matters of opinion which are not intended as statements of fact, and no representation is made as to the correctness of such estimates and opinions, or that they will be realized.

The information and expressions of opinion contained herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the District or other matters described herein. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking" and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the undertakings of the Texas Education Agency and the District, respectively, to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION THEREOF.

NONE OF THE DISTRICT, ITS FINANCIAL ADVISOR, OR THE PURCHASER MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY ("DTC") OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM, OR THE AFFAIRS OF THE TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY ("TEA") DESCRIBED UNDER "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM", AS SUCH INFORMATION WAS PROVIDED BY DTC AND TEA, RESPECTIVELY.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THIS ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING THE SCHEDULE AND ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION.

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

<p>SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT ..... 1</p> <p>INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT ..... 2</p> <p>PLAN OF FINANCING ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Purpose ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Refunded Bonds ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Sources and Uses of Funds ..... 2</p> <p>THE BONDS ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">General Description ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Authority for Issuance ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Optional Redemption ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Security ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Permanent School Fund Guarantee ..... 4</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Legality ..... 4</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Payment Record ..... 4</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Amendments ..... 4</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Defeasance ..... 4</p> <p>REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES ..... 4</p> <p>BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM ..... 5</p> <p>REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE ..... 6</p> <p>AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES ..... 7</p> <p>THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT ... 10</p> <p>STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS ..... 11</p>	<p>CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM ..... 11</p> <p>THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT ..... 14</p> <p>THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM ... 14</p> <p>TAX RATE LIMITATIONS ..... 26</p> <p>DEBT LIMITATIONS ..... 27</p> <p>EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS ..... 27</p> <p>RATING ..... 27</p> <p>LEGAL MATTERS ..... 27</p> <p>TAX MATTERS ..... 28</p> <p>INVESTMENT POLICIES ..... 29</p> <p>REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE .. 31</p> <p>FINANCIAL ADVISOR ..... 31</p> <p>LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS ..... 31</p> <p>CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION ..... 31</p> <p>VERIFICATION OF ARITHMETICAL AND MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS ..... 33</p> <p>LITIGATION ..... 33</p> <p>FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS ..... 33</p> <p>WINNING BIDDER ..... 33</p> <p>CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT ..... 33</p> <p>CONCLUDING STATEMENT ..... 34</p>
---	--

Schedule of Refunded Bonds ..... Schedule I

Financial Information of the District ..... Appendix A

General Information Regarding the District and Its Economy ..... Appendix B

Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel ..... Appendix C

Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018 ..... Appendix D

## SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

The selected data is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this page from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without this entire Official Statement.

<b>The District</b>	The Elkhart Independent School District (the "District") is a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Anderson and Houston Counties, Texas. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.
<b>The Bonds</b>	The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$4,550,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including particularly Chapter 1207, as amended, Texas Government Code ("Chapter 1207") and the order (the "Order") adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") on March 25, 2019. As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1207, the Board, in the Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials to execute a pricing certificate establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) refund a portion of the District's outstanding bonds for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "PLAN OF FINANCING - Purpose", "PLAN OF FINANCING - Refunded Bonds" and "Schedule I – Schedule of Refunded Bonds").
<b>Paying Agent/Registrar</b>	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. The District intends to use the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein).
<b>Security</b>	The Bonds will constitute direct obligations of the District, payable as to principal and interest from ad valorem taxes levied annually against all taxable property located within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. Payments of principal and interest on the Bonds will be further secured by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of Texas. (See "THE BONDS – Security", "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").
<b>Redemption</b>	The Bonds maturing on or after August 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Optional Redemption"). Additionally, the Purchaser may select certain maturities of the Bonds to be grouped together as a term bond, and such term bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption" herein).
<b>Permanent School Fund Guarantee</b>	The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (defined herein), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM.")
<b>Rating</b>	The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"), based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the TEA. The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "A+" by S&P. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" and "RATING" herein.)
<b>Tax Matters</b>	In the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, interest on the Bonds is excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under existing law subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. (See "TAX MATTERS" and "Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.")
<b>Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations</b>	The District will designate the Bonds as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions. (See "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations").
<b>Payment Record</b>	The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.
<b>Legal Opinion</b>	Delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the rendering of an opinion as to legality by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").
<b>Delivery</b>	When issued, anticipated to be on or about May 21, 2019.

## INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

This Official Statement (the "Official Statement"), which includes the cover page, Schedule I and the Appendices attached hereto, has been prepared by the Elkhart Independent School District (the "District"), a political subdivision of the State of Texas (the "State") located in Anderson and Houston Counties, Texas, in connection with the offering by the District of its Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") identified on page ii hereof.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the District from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information, and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in the financial position or other affairs of the District. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by that financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future.

There follows in this Official Statement descriptions of the Bonds and the order (the "Order") adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District (the "Board") on March 25, 2019 authorizing the issuance of the Bonds and certain other information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained upon request by writing the Elkhart Independent School District, 301 East Parker, Elkhart, Texas 75839 and, during the offering period, from the Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024 by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as of its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of this Official Statement relating to the Bonds will be submitted by the initial Purchaser of the Bonds to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and will be available through its Electronic Municipal Market Access system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

## PLAN OF FINANCING

### Purpose

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be utilized to (i) refund certain of the District's currently outstanding indebtedness as disclosed in Schedule I hereto (the "Refunded Bonds") for debt service savings and (ii) pay the costs of issuance of the Bonds.

### Refunded Bonds

The principal and interest due on the Refunded Bonds are to be paid on August 15, 2019, the redemption date of such Refunded Bonds (the "Redemption Date"), from funds to be deposited pursuant to a certain special escrow agreement (the "Escrow Agreement") between the District and BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the "Escrow Agent"). The Order provides that from the proceeds of the sale of the Bonds received from the Purchaser and other available District funds, if any are necessary, the District will deposit with the Escrow Agent the amount that, together with investment earnings thereon, will be sufficient to accomplish the discharge and final payment of the Refunded Bonds on the Redemption Date. Such funds will be held by the Escrow Agent in a special escrow account (the "Escrow Fund") and used to purchase Defeasance Securities authorized by Section 1207.062 Texas Government Code and the bond order authorizing the Refunded Bonds. Under the Escrow Agreement, the Escrow Fund is irrevocably pledged to the payment of the principal of and interest on the Refunded Bonds.

Public Finance Partners, LLC, a firm of independent certified public accountants, will verify at the time of delivery of the Bonds to the Purchaser the mathematical accuracy of the schedules that demonstrate the Defeasance Securities will mature and pay interest in such amounts which, together with uninvested funds, if any, in the Escrow Fund, will be sufficient to pay, when due, the principal of and interest on the Refunded Bonds on the Redemption Date. Such maturing principal of and interest on the Escrowed Securities will not be available to pay the Bonds (see "VERIFICATION OF ARITHMETICAL AND MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS").

By the deposit of the Escrowed Securities and cash, if necessary, with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, the District will have effected the defeasance of all of the Refunded Bonds in accordance with State law. It is the opinion of Bond Counsel that as a result of such defeasance and in reliance upon the verification report of Public Finance Partners LLC, the Refunded Bonds will be outstanding only for the purpose of receiving payments from the Escrowed Securities and any cash held for such purpose by the Escrow Agent and such Refunded Bonds will not be deemed as being outstanding obligations of the District payable from taxes nor for the purpose of applying any limitation on the issuance of debt. Thereafter, the District will have no further responsibility with respect to amounts available in the Escrow Fund for the payment of the Refunded Bonds from time to time, including any insufficiency therein caused by the failure of the Escrow Agent to receive payment when due on the Escrowed Securities. Upon defeasance of the Refunded Bonds, the payment of such Refunded Bonds will no longer be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund Guarantee.

### Sources and Uses of Funds

The proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be applied approximately as follows:

<b>Sources</b>	
Par Amount of Bonds	\$
Net Original Issue Reoffering Premium	
Accrued Interest on Bonds	
<b>Total Sources of Funds</b>	\$ _____
<b>Uses</b>	
Deposit to Escrow Fund	\$
Costs of Issuance	
Purchaser's Discount	
Deposit to Interest and Sinking Fund	
<b>Total Uses of Funds</b>	\$ _____

## THE BONDS

### General Description

The Bonds will be dated May 1, 2019 and will bear interest from such Dated Date. The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts set forth on page ii of this Official Statement. Interest on the Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months, and is payable on August 15, 2019 and on each February 15 and August 15 thereafter until stated maturity or prior redemption.

The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds. The Bonds will be issued in the denominations of \$5,000 of principal or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity.

Interest on the Bonds is payable by check mailed on or before each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially, BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar's registration books on the Record Date (as defined herein) or by such other customary banking arrangement acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar and the registered owner to whom interest is to be paid, provided, however, that such person shall bear all risk and expense of such other arrangements. Principal of the Bonds will be payable only upon presentation of such Bonds at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar at stated maturity or prior redemption. So long as the Bonds are registered in the name of CEDE & CO. or other nominee for The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), payments of principal of and interest on the Bonds will be made as described in "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds is a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions are authorized to close, and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

### Authority for Issuance

The Bonds are issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, including, Chapter 1207, as amended, Texas Government Code ("Chapter 1207"), and the Order. As permitted by the provisions of Chapter 1207, the Board, in the Order, delegated the authority to certain District officials (each, a "Designated Financial Officer") to execute a pricing certificate (the "Pricing Certificate", and together with the Order, the "Bond Order") establishing the pricing terms for the Bonds.

### Optional Redemption

The Bonds maturing on or after August 15, 2029 are subject to redemption, at the option of the District, in whole or in part, on February 15, 2029, or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed.

### Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption

Two or more consecutive maturities of the Bonds may be grouped together as a term bond by the Purchaser, and such term bonds would be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the Bond Order.

### Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices

Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the registered owner appearing on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice. ANY NOTICE OF REDEMPTION SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN IRRESPECTIVE OF WHETHER RECEIVED BY THE BONDHOLDER, AND, SUBJECT TO PROVISION FOR PAYMENT OF THE REDEMPTION PRICE HAVING BEEN MADE AND THE SATISFACTION OF ANY OTHER CONDITION SPECIFIED IN THE NOTICE, INTEREST ON THE REDEEMED BONDS SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE FROM AND AFTER SUCH REDEMPTION DATE NOTWITHSTANDING THAT A BOND HAS NOT BEEN PRESENTED FOR PAYMENT.

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the beneficial owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement redemption of such Bonds from the beneficial owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or beneficial owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

With respect to any optional redemption of the Bonds, unless certain prerequisites to such redemption required by the Bond Order have been met and moneys sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds to be redeemed shall have been received by the Paying Agent prior to the giving of such notice of redemption, such notice may state that said redemption is conditional upon the satisfaction of such prerequisites and receipt of such moneys by the Paying Agent/Registrar on or prior to the date fixed for such redemption. If a conditional notice of redemption is given and such prerequisites to the redemption are not satisfied or sufficient moneys are not received, such notice shall be of no force and effect, the District shall not redeem such Bonds and the Paying Agent/Registrar shall give notice, in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given, to the effect that the Bonds have not been redeemed.

### Security

The Bonds are direct obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from an ad valorem tax annually levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, on all taxable property within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent

School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

### **Permanent School Fund Guarantee**

In connection with the sale of the Bonds, the District has received conditional approval from the Commissioner of Education of the TEA for the guarantee of the Bonds under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (Chapter 45, Subchapter C, of the Texas Education Code, as amended). Subject to meeting certain conditions discussed under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, the Bonds will be absolutely and unconditionally guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. In the event of a payment default by the District, registered owners will receive all payments due from the corpus of the Permanent School Fund.

In the event the District defeases any of the Bonds, the payment of such defeased Bonds will cease to be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund Guarantee.

### **Legality**

The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Dallas, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "LEGAL MATTERS" and "Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").

### **Payment Record**

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

### **Amendments**

The District may amend the Bond Order without the consent of or notice to any registered owners in any manner not detrimental to the interests of the registered owners, including the curing of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or formal defect or omission therein. In addition, the District may, with the written consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Bonds then outstanding, amend, add to, or rescind any of the provisions of the Bond Order; except that, without the consent of the registered owners of all of the Bonds then outstanding, no such amendment, addition, or rescission may (1) extend the time or times of payment of the principal of and interest on the Bonds, reduce the principal amount, thereof, the redemption price, or the rate of interest thereon, or in any other way modify the terms of payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds, (2) give any preference to any Bond over any other Bond, or (3) reduce the aggregate principal amount of Bonds required to be held by Holders for consent to any such amendment, addition or rescission.

### **Defeasance**

The Order provides for the defeasance of the Bonds when the payment of the principal of and premium, if any, on such Bonds, plus interest thereon to the due date thereof (whether such due date be by reason of maturity, redemption, or otherwise), is provided by irrevocably depositing with the Paying Agent/Registrar, or other authorized escrow agent, in trust (1) money sufficient to make such payment or (2) Government Securities to mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times to insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to make such payment, and all necessary and proper fees, compensation and expenses of the paying agent for the Bonds. The Bond Order provides that "Government Securities" means (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date of their acquisition or purchase by the District, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and that, on the date of their acquisition or purchase by the District, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, and (d) any other then authorized securities or obligations under applicable law that may be used to defease obligations such as the Bonds. The District has the right, subject to satisfying the requirements of (1) and (2) above, to substitute other Government Securities for the Government Securities originally deposited, to reinvest the uninvested moneys on deposit for such defeasance and to withdraw for the benefit of the District moneys in excess of the amount required for such defeasance.

There is no assurance that the current law will not be changed in a manner which would permit investments other than those described above to be made with amounts deposited to defease the Bonds. Because the Bond Order does not contractually limit such investments, registered owners may be deemed to have consented to defeasance with such other investments, notwithstanding the fact that such investments may not be of the same investment quality as those currently permitted under State law. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities used as Government Securities or that for any other Government Security will be maintained at any particular rating category.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid and will cease to be outstanding obligations secured by the Order or treated as debt of the District for purposes of taxation or applying any limitation on the District's ability to issue debt or for any other purpose. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment or redemption of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or to take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished; provided, however, that the right to call the Bonds for redemption is not extinguished if the District: (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption; (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements; and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

Furthermore, the Permanent School Fund Guarantee will terminate with respect to the Bonds defeased in the manner provided above.

### **REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES**

The Bond Order does not provide specific events of default with respect to the Bonds. If the District defaults in the payment, when due, of principal of or, interest, on the Bonds or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Order, and the State fails to honor the Permanent School Fund Guarantee as hereinafter discussed, the failure to perform which materially, adversely affects the rights of the owners, including but not limited to, their prospective



ability to be repaid in accordance with the Order, any registered owner is entitled to seek a writ of mandamus from a court of proper jurisdiction requiring the District to make such payment or observe and perform such covenants, obligations, or conditions. The issuance of a writ of mandamus may be sought if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Order and the District's obligations are not uncertain or disputed, as well as to enforce the rights of payment under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles and rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of stated maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Order does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the owners upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition and accordingly all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court has ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006), that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. Because it is unclear whether the Texas legislature has effectively waived the District's sovereign immunity from a suit for money damages, Bondholders may not be able to bring such a suit against the District for breach of the Bonds or Order covenants in the absence of District action. As a result, bondholders may not be able to bring such a suit against the District for breach of the Bonds or Order covenants in the absence of District action. Even if a judgment against the District could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the District's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the District or sell property within the District to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the District is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors and by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion.

#### **BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM**

*This section describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor and the Purchaser believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.*

*The District cannot and does not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds or other notices, to Direct Participants, (2) Direct Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds) or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with Direct Participants are on file with DTC.*

DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited Securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the Book-Entry-Only System for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity

of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to The District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

All payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. All payments with respect to the Bonds to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, physical Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The District may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor Bonds depository). In that event, physical Bond certificates will be printed and delivered.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's Book-Entry-Only System has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser take any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

#### **Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of this Official Statement**

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Direct or Indirect Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

### **REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE**

#### **Paying Agent/Registrar**

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar until the Bonds are duly paid.

#### **Successor Paying Agent/Registrar**

Provision is made in the Order for replacing the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the District replaces the Paying Agent/Registrar, such Paying Agent/Registrar shall, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, deliver the Paying Agent/Registrar's records to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar, and the successor Paying Agent/Registrar shall act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States or any state or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District has agreed to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

#### **Initial Registration**

Definitive Bonds will be initially registered and delivered only to CEDE & CO., the nominee of DTC pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein.

#### **Future Registration**

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, the Bonds may be transferred, registered and assigned on the registration books only upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bonds or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond or Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. To the extent possible, new Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New

Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like aggregate principal amount as the Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer.

### **Record Date For Interest Payment**

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person to whom the interest on the Bonds is payable on any interest payment date means the close of business on the last business day of the next preceding month. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the District. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (the "Special Payment Date" which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

### **Limitation on Transfer of Bonds**

Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar shall be required to transfer to an assignee of a holder any Bond within 45 days prior to its redemption date; provided, however, such limitation of transfer shall not be applicable to an exchange by the registered owner of the uncalled balance of a Bond called for redemption in part.

### **Replacement Bonds**

If any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond in the same principal amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar a certificate to the effect that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

## **AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES**

### **Property Tax Code and County Wide Appraisal District**

The Texas Property Tax Code (the "Tax Code") provides for county-wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board responsible for appraising property for all taxable units within the county. The Anderson and Houston County Appraisal Districts (collectively, the "Appraisal District") are responsible for appraising property within the District as of January 1 of each year. The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District is subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board (the "Appraisal Review Board") which is appointed by the Appraisal District's Board of Directors. Such appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by the District in establishing its tax roll and tax rate.

### **Property Subject to Taxation by the District**

Except for certain exemptions provided by State law, all real and certain tangible personal property with a tax situs in the District is subject to taxation by the District. Principal categories of exempt property (including certain exemptions which are subject to local option by the District) include property owned by the State or its political subdivisions if the property is used for public purposes; property exempt from ad valorem taxation by federal law; certain improvements to real property and certain tangible personal property located in designated reinvestment zones on which the District has agreed to abate ad valorem taxes, certain household goods, family supplies and personal effects; farm products owned by the producers; certain property of a nonprofit corporation used in scientific research and educational activities benefiting a college or university; and designated historic sites. Other principal categories of exempt property include tangible personal property not held or used for production of income; solar and windpowered energy devices; most individually owned automobiles; \$10,000 State mandated exemption to residential homesteads of persons ages 65 or over or disabled; a State mandated exemption up to a maximum of \$12,000 for real or personal property of disabled veterans or the surviving spouse or children of an individual who died while on active duty in the armed forces; a State mandated \$25,000 in market value exemption for all residential homesteads (see "Residential Homestead Exemptions" below); and certain classes of intangible property. The Tax Code provides that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployment is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until such surviving spouse remarries. In addition, except for increases attributable to certain improvements, the District is prohibited by State law from increasing the total ad valorem tax on the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or of disabled persons above the amount of tax imposed in the year such residence qualified for an exemption based on the age or disability of the owner. The freeze on ad valorem taxes on the homesteads of persons 65 years of age or older and the disabled is also transferable to a different residence homestead. Also, a surviving spouse of a taxpayer who qualifies for the freeze on ad valorem taxes is entitled to the same exemption so long as (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was 55 or older when the deceased spouse died and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. Pursuant to a constitutional amendment approved by the voters on May 12, 2007, legislation was enacted to reduce the school property tax limitation imposed by the freeze on taxes paid on residence homesteads of persons 65 years of age or over or of disabled persons to correspond to reductions in local school district tax rates from the 2005 tax year to the 2006 tax year and from the 2006 tax year to the 2007 tax year (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Overview" herein). The school property tax limitation provided by the constitutional amendment and enabling legislation apply to the 2007 and subsequent tax years. Owners of agricultural and open space land, under certain circumstances, may request valuation of such land on the basis of productive capacity rather than market value. Article VIII, Section 1-j of the Texas Constitution provides for an exemption from ad valorem taxation for "freeport property," which is defined as goods detained in the State for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication. Taxing units that took action prior to April 1, 1990 may continue to tax freeport property and decisions to continue to tax freeport property may be reversed in the future. However, decisions to exempt freeport property are not subject to reversal. Article VIII, Section 1-n of the Texas Constitution provides for the exemption from taxation of "goods-in-transit." "Goods-in-transit", defined by the Tax Code as personal property acquired or imported into Texas and transported to another location in the State or outside of the State within 175 days of the date the property was acquired or imported into Texas. The exemption excludes oil, natural gas, petroleum products, aircraft and special inventory, including motor vehicle, vessel and out-board motor, heavy equipment and manufactured housing inventory. The Tax Code provision permits local governmental entities, on a local option basis, to take official

action by January 1 of the year preceding a tax year, after holding a public hearing, to tax goods-in-transit during the following tax year. A taxpayer may receive only one of the freeport or goods-in-transit exemptions for tangible personal property. Senate Bill 1, passed by the 82nd Texas Legislature, 1st Called Session, requires again that the governmental entities take affirmative action after October 1 of the prior year but prior to January 1 of the first tax year in which the governing body proposes to tax good-in-transit to continue its taxation of good-in-transit in the 2012 tax year and beyond. See "THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT" and "APPENDIX A – FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT - ASSESSED VALUATION" for a schedule of the amount of exemptions granted by the District.

A city or county may create a tax increment financing zone ("TIF") within the city or county with defined boundaries and establish a base value of taxable property in the TIF at the time of its creation. Overlapping taxing units, including school districts, may agree with the city or county to contribute all or part of future ad valorem taxes levied and collected against the "incremental value" (taxable value in excess of the base value) of taxable real property in the TIF to pay or finance the costs of certain public improvements in the TIF, and such taxes levied and collected for and on behalf of the TIF are not available for general use by such contributing taxing units. Prior to September 1, 2001, school districts were allowed to enter into tax abatement agreements to encourage economic development. Under such agreements, a property owner agrees to construct certain improvements on its property. The school district in turn agrees not to levy a tax on all or part of the increased value attributable to the improvements until the expiration of the agreement. The abatement agreement could last for a period of up to 10 years. Effective September 1, 2001, school districts may not enter into tax abatement agreements under the general statute that permits cities and counties to initiate tax abatement agreements. In addition, credit will not be given by the Commissioner of Education in determining a district's property value wealth per student for (1) the appraisal value, in excess of the "frozen" value, of property that is located in a TIF created after May 31, 1999 (except in certain limited circumstances where the city creating the TIF gave notice prior to May 31, 1999 to all other taxing units that levy ad valorem taxes in the TIF of its intention to create the TIF and the TIF was created and had its final project and financing plan approved by the municipality prior to August 31, 1999) or (2) for the loss of value of abated property under any abatement agreement entered into after May 31, 1993.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in 2001 the Legislature enacted legislation known as the Texas Economic Development Act, which provides incentives for certain school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values and provide ad valorem tax credits to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the district. Generally, during the last eight years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may only levy and collect ad valorem taxes for maintenance and operation purposes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. The taxpayer is entitled to a tax credit from the school district for the amount of taxes imposed during the first two years of the tax limitation agreement on the appraised value of the property above the agreed-to limited value. Additional State funding is provided to a school district for each year of such tax limitation in the amount of the tax credit provided to the taxpayer. During the first two years of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the district's rollback tax rate (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate").

### **Valuation of Property for Taxation**

Generally, property in the District must be appraised by the Appraisal District at market value as of January 1 of each year. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and the market data comparison method of appraisal, and the method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. Oil and gas reserves are assessed on the basis of a valuation process which uses pricing information contained in the most recently published Early Release Overview of the Annual Energy Outlook published by the United States Energy Information Administration, as well as appraisal formulas developed by the State Comptroller of Public Accounts. Effective January 1, 2016, the valuation assessment of oil and gas reserves will depend upon pricing information in either the standard edition of the Annual Energy Outlook or, if the most recently published edition of the Annual Energy Outlook was published before December 1 of the preceding calendar year, the Short-Term Energy Outlook report published in January of the current calendar year. Once an appraisal roll is prepared and finally approved by the applicable Appraisal Review Board, it is used by the District in establishing its tax rolls and tax rate. Assessments under the Tax Code are based on one hundred percent (100%) of market value, except as described below, and no assessment ratio can be applied.

State law requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be based solely on the property's value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a residence homestead for a tax year to an amount that would not exceed the lesser of (1) the property's market value in the most recent tax year in which the market value was determined by the appraisal district or (2) the sum of (a) 10% of the property's appraised value in the preceding tax year, plus (b) the property's appraised value the preceding tax year, plus (c) the market value of all new improvements to the property.

Article VII of the Texas Constitution and the Tax Code permit land designated for agricultural use (Section 1-d), open space or timberland (Section 1-d-1) to be appraised at its value based on the land's capacity to produce agricultural or timber products rather than at its fair market value. Landowners wishing to avail themselves of the agricultural use designation must apply for the designation, and the appraiser is required by the Tax Code to act on each claimant's right to the designation individually. If a claimant receives the designation and later loses it by changing the use of the property or selling it to an unqualified owner, the District can collect taxes for previous years based on the new value, including three years for agricultural use and five years for agricultural open-space land and timberland prior to the loss of the designation. The same land may not be qualified under both Section 1-d and 1-d-1.

The Tax Code requires the Appraisal District to implement a plan for periodic reappraisal of property to update appraisal values. The plan must provide for appraisal of all real property in the Appraisal District at least once every three years. The District, at its expense, has the right to obtain from the Appraisal District current estimates of appraised values within the District or an estimate of any new property or improvements within the District. While such current estimates of appraisal values may serve to indicate the rate and extent of growth of taxable values within the District, it cannot be used for establishing a tax rate within the District until such time as the Appraisal District chooses to formally include such values on its appraisal rolls.

### **Residential Homestead Exemptions**

Under Section 1-b, Article VIII of the Texas Constitution and State law, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of not less than \$3,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or the disabled from all ad valorem taxes thereafter levied by the political subdivision.

Once authorized, such exemption may be repealed or decreased or increased in amount (i) by the governing body of the political subdivision or (ii) by a favorable vote of a majority of the qualified voters at an election called by the governing body of the political subdivision, which election must be called upon receipt of a petition signed by at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who

voted in the preceding election of the political subdivision. In the case of a decrease, the amount of the exemption may not be reduced to less than \$3,000 of the market value.

The surviving spouse of an individual who qualifies for the foregoing exemption for the residence homestead of a person 65 or older (but not the disabled) is entitled to an exemption for the same property in an amount equal to that of the exemption for which the deceased spouse qualified if (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was at least 55 years of age at the time of the death of the individual's spouse and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse.

Section 11.131 of the Texas Tax Code states that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until the surviving spouse remarries.

Following the approval by the voters at a November 5, 2013 statewide election, a partially disabled veteran or the surviving spouse of a partially disabled veteran is entitled to an exemption equal to the percentage of the veteran's disability, if the residence was donated at no cost to the veteran by a charitable organization.

Also approved by the November 5, 2013 election was a constitutional amendment providing that the surviving spouse of a member of the armed forces who is killed in action is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the service member's death and said property was the service member's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

Following the approval by the voters at a November 7, 2017 statewide election (with an effective date of January 1, 2018), the surviving spouse of a first responder who is killed or fatally injured in the line of duty is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the first responder's death and said property was the first responder's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

In addition to any other exemptions provided by the Tax Code, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads, with a minimum exemption of \$5,000.

In the case of residence homestead exemptions granted under Section 1-b, Article VIII, ad valorem taxes may continue to be levied against the value of homesteads exempted where ad valorem taxes have previously been pledged for the payment of debt if cessation of the levy would impair the obligation of the contract by which the debt was created.

The governing body of a political subdivision is prohibited from repealing or reducing the amount of an optional homestead exemption that was in place for the 2014 tax year (fiscal year 2015) during the period ending December 31, 2019.

### **District and Taxpayer Remedies**

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may appeal orders of the Appraisal Review Board by filing a petition for review in district court within 45 days after notice is received that a final order has been entered. In such event, the property value in question may be determined by the court, or by a jury, if requested by any party, or through binding arbitration, if requested by the taxpayer. Additionally, taxing units may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Tax Code.

### **Levy and Collection of Taxes**

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes, unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. By the later of September 30<sup>th</sup> or 60 days after the certified appraisal roll is delivered to the District, the rate of taxation must be set by the Board based upon the valuation of property within the District as of the preceding January 1 and the amount required to be raised for debt service and maintenance and operations purposes. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty from six percent (6%) to twelve percent (12%) of the amount of the tax, depending on the time of payment, and accrues interest at the rate of one percent (1%) per month. If the tax is not paid by the following July 1, an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) may under certain circumstances be imposed by the District. The Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes under certain circumstances.

### **Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate**

In setting its annual tax rate, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the district's "rollback tax rate" without approval by a majority of the voters voting at an election approving the higher rate. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures and (2) a rate for debt service. The rollback tax rate for a school district is the lesser of (A) the sum of (1) the product of the district's "State Compression Percentage" for that year multiplied by \$1.50, (2) the rate of \$0.04, (3) any rate increase above the rollback tax rate in prior years that were approved by voters, and (4) the district's current debt rate, or (B) the sum of (1) the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate, (2) the product of the district's State Compression Percentage for that year multiplied by \$0.06; and (3) the district's current debt rate (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts" for a description of the "State Compression Percentage"). If for the preceding tax year a district adopted an M&O tax rate that was less than its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year, the district's rollback tax for the current year is calculated as if the district had adopted an M&O tax rate for the preceding tax year equal to its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year.

The "effective maintenance and operations tax rate" for a school district is the tax rate that, applied to the current tax values, would provide local maintenance and operating funds, when added to State funds to be distributed to the district pursuant to Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code for the school year beginning in the current tax year, in the same amount as would have been available to the district in the preceding year if the funding elements of wealth equalization and State funding for the current year had been in effect for the preceding year.

Section 26.05 of the Tax Code provides that the governing body of a taxing unit is required to adopt the annual tax rate for the unit before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit for the tax year to be the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year. Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c) and (d), and, if applicable, Subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. A district may adopt its budget after adopting a tax rate for the tax year in which the fiscal year covered by the budget begins if the district elects to adopt its tax rate before receiving the certified appraisal roll. A district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

**District’s Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies**

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. The District has no lien for unpaid taxes on personal property but does have a lien for unpaid taxes upon real property, which lien is discharged upon payment. On January 1 of each year, such tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The District’s tax lien is on a parity with the tax liens of other such taxing units. A tax lien on real property taxes takes priority over the claims of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien. The automatic stay in bankruptcy will prevent the automatic attachment of tax liens with respect to post-petition tax years unless relief is sought and granted by the bankruptcy judge. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

Except with respect to taxpayers who are 65 years of age or older, at any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property. Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, by the effects of market conditions on the foreclosure sale price, by taxpayer redemption rights, or by bankruptcy proceedings which restrict the collection of taxpayer debts.

**THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT**

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units in the applicable County. The Appraisal District is governed by a board of directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within the applicable County.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District collects an additional 20% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Tax Code.

The District’s taxes are collected by the Anderson County Tax Assessor Collector and Houston County Tax Assessor Collector.

The District does not allow split payments and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone and has not granted any tax abatements.

The District does not grant any portion of the additional local option exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads. The District does not grant the local over-65 exemption.

The District has not granted the freeport exemption and has not taken action to tax “goods-in-transit”.

Charges for penalties and interest on the unpaid balance of delinquent taxes are as follows:

<u>Date</u>	<u>Penalty</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Cumulative Total</u>
February	6%	1%	7%
March	7	2	9
April	8	3	11
May	9	4	13
June	10	5	15
July	12	6	18

*After July, the penalty remains at 12%, and interest increases at the rate of 1% each month. In addition, State law allows that, if an account is delinquent in July, an amount up to 20% attorney’s collection fee may be added to the total tax penalty and interest charge.*

## STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS

### Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the "Court") has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the "Finance System"). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") from time to time (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to "establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools," or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court's previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal.*, 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) ("*Morath*"). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that "[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements." The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding "system" is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

### Possible Effects of Changes in Law on District Bonds

The Court's decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Finance System was "undeniably imperfect". While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality "would not, however, affect the district's authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system's unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions" (collectively, the "Contract Clauses"), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District's financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District's obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM".

## CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

### Overview

The following language constitutes only a summary of the Finance System as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 41 through 46 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Funding for school districts in the State is provided primarily from State and local sources. State funding for all school districts is provided through a set of funding formulas comprising the "Foundation School Program", as well as two facilities funding programs. Generally, the Finance System is designed to promote wealth equalization among school districts by balancing State and local sources of funds available to school districts. In particular, because districts with relatively high levels of property wealth per student can raise more local funding, such districts receive less State aid, and in some cases, are required to disburse local funds to equalize their overall funding relative to other school districts. Conversely, because districts with relatively low levels of property wealth per student have limited access to local funding, the Finance System is designed to provide more State funding to such districts. Thus, as a school district's property wealth per student increases, State funding to the school district is reduced. As a school district's property wealth per student declines, the Finance System is designed to increase that district's State funding. The Finance System provides a similar equalization system for facilities funding wherein districts with the same tax rate for debt service raise the same amount of combined State and local funding. Facilities funding for debt incurred in prior years is expected to continue in future years; however, State funding for new school facilities has not been consistently appropriated by the Texas Legislature, as further described below.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a limited maintenance and operations ("M&O") tax to pay current expenses and an unlimited interest and sinking fund ("I&S") tax to pay debt service on bonds. Generally, under current law, M&O tax rates are subject to a statutory maximum rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value for most school districts (although a few districts can exceed the \$1.17 limit as a result of authorization approved in the 1960s). Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding indebtedness through the levy of an ad valorem tax at a rate of not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable property at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, districts may levy a tax to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein). As noted above, because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by the same tax rate is also subject to wide variation among school districts.

### Local Funding for School Districts

The primary source of local funding for school districts is collections from ad valorem taxes levied against taxable property located in each school district. Prior to reform legislation that became effective during the 2006-2007 fiscal year (the "Reform Legislation"), the maximum M&O tax rate for most school districts was generally limited to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. At the time the Reform Legislation was enacted, the majority of school districts were levying an M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of

taxable value. The Reform Legislation required each school district to “compress” its tax rate by an amount equal to the “State Compression Percentage”. The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the State Compression Percentage has been set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value. School districts are permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate by up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate without voter approval (for most districts, up to \$1.04 per \$100 of taxable value). In addition, if the voters approve a tax rate increase through a local referendum, districts may, in general, increase their M&O tax rate up to a maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value and receive State equalization funds for such taxing effort (see “AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate”). Elections authorizing the levy of M&O taxes held in certain school districts under older laws, however, may subject M&O tax rates in such districts to other limitations (see “TAX RATE LIMITATIONS” herein).

### **State Funding for School Districts**

State funding for school districts is provided through the Foundation School Program, which provides each school district with a minimum level of funding (a “Basic Allotment”) for each student in average daily attendance (“ADA”). The Basic Allotment is calculated for each school district using various weights and adjustments based on the number of students in average daily attendance and also varies depending on each district’s compressed tax rate. This Basic Allotment formula determines most of the allotments making up a district’s basic level of funding, referred to as “Tier One” of the Foundation School Program. The basic level of funding is then “enriched” with additional funds known as “Tier Two” of the Foundation School Program. Tier Two provides a guaranteed level of funding for each cent of local tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates above \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value). The Finance System also provides an Existing Debt Allotment (“EDA”) to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment (“IFA”) to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment (“NIFA”) to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. In 2017, the 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,378,500,000 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State’s share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the district’s local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district’s local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the Texas Legislature. Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the Texas Legislature for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service on new bonds issued by districts to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

Tier One allotments are intended to provide all districts a basic level of education necessary to meet applicable legal standards. Tier Two allotments are intended to guarantee each school district that is not subject to the wealth transfer provisions described below an opportunity to supplement that basic program at a level of its own choice; however, Tier Two allotments may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

As described above, the cost of the basic program is based on an allotment per student known as the “Basic Allotment”. For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the Basic Allotment is \$5,140 for each student in average daily attendance. The Basic Allotment is then adjusted for all districts by several different weights to account for inherent differences between school districts. These weights consist of (i) a cost adjustment factor intended to address varying economic conditions that affect teacher hiring known as the “cost of education index”, (ii) district-size adjustments for small and mid-size districts, and (iii) an adjustment for the sparsity of the district’s student population. The cost of education index, district-size and population sparsity adjustments, as applied to the Basic Allotment, create what is referred to as the “Adjusted Allotment”. The Adjusted Allotment is used to compute a “regular program allotment”, as well as various other allotments associated with educating students with other specified educational needs.

Tier Two supplements the basic funding of Tier One and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., guaranteed levels of funding by the State) depending on the district’s local tax effort. The first six cents of tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.00 to \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value) will, for most districts, generate the a guaranteed yield of \$99.41 and \$106.28 per cent per weighted student in average daily attendance (“WADA”) in the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years, respectively. The second level of Tier Two is generated by tax effort that exceeds the district’s compressed tax rate plus six cents (for most districts eligible for this level of funding, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.06 to \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value) and has a guaranteed yield per cent per WADA of \$31.95 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. Property-wealthy school districts that have an M&O tax rate that exceeds the district’s compressed tax rate plus six cents are subject to recapture above this tax rate level at the equivalent wealth per student of \$319,500 (see “Wealth Transfer Provisions” below).

Previously, a district with a compressed tax rate below \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value (known as a “fractionally funded district”) received a Basic Allotment which was reduced proportionately to the degree that the district’s compressed tax rate fell short of \$1.00. Beginning in the 2017-2018 fiscal year, the compressed tax rate of a fractionally funded district now includes the portion of such district’s current M&O tax rate in excess of the first six cents above the district’s compressed tax rate until the district’s compressed tax rate is equal to the state maximum compressed tax rate of \$1.00. Thus, for fractionally funded districts, each eligible one cent of M&O tax levy above the district’s compressed tax rate plus six cents will have a guaranteed yield based on Tier One funding instead of the Tier Two yield, thereby reducing the penalty against the Basic Allotment.

In addition to the operations funding components of the Foundation School Program discussed above, the Foundation School Program provides a facilities funding component consisting of the Instructional Facilities Allotment (IFA) program and the Existing Debt Allotment (EDA) program. These programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a district’s I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the “IFA Guaranteed Yield”) in State and local funds for each cent of tax effort to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The guaranteed yield per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA has been \$35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where the State Legislature allocates appropriated funds for new IFA awards, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the Commissioner before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA state assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable



to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. The 85th State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded. State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") was the same as the IFA Guaranteed Yield (\$35 per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA). The 85th Texas Legislature changed the EDA Yield to the lesser of (i) \$40 or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The yield for the 2018-2019 fiscal year is approximately \$37. The portion of a district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first 29 cents of debt service tax (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the Texas Legislature). In general, a district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the district receives IFA funding.

A district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. The 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$23,750,000 for each of the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years for NIFA allotments.

## **2006 Legislation**

Since the enactment of the Reform Legislation in 2006, most school districts in the State have operated with a "target" funding level per student ("Target Revenue") that is based upon the "hold harmless" principles embodied in the Reform Legislation. This system of Target Revenue was superimposed on the Foundation School Program and made existing funding formulas substantially less important for most school districts. The Reform Legislation was intended to lower M&O tax rates in order to give school districts "meaningful discretion" in setting their M&O tax rates, while holding school districts harmless by providing them with the same level of overall funding they received prior to the enactment of the Reform Legislation. To make up for this shortfall, the Reform Legislation authorized Additional State Aid for Tax Reduction ("ASATR") for each school district in an amount equal to the difference between the amount that each district would receive under the Foundation School Program and the amount of each district's Target Revenue funding level. However, in subsequent legislative sessions, the Texas Legislature has gradually reduced the reliance on ASATR by increasing the funding formulas, and beginning with the 2017-18 school year, the statutes authorizing ASATR were repealed (eliminating revenue targets and ASATR funding).

## **2017 Legislation**

The 85<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature, including the regular session which concluded on May 29, 2017 and the special session which concluded on August 15, 2017, did not enact substantive changes to the Finance System. However, certain bills during the regular session and House Bill 21, which was passed during the special session and signed by the Governor on August 16, 2017, revised certain aspects of the formulas used to determine school district entitlements under the Finance System. In addition to amounts previously discussed, the 85<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature additionally appropriated funds to (i) establish a Financial Hardship Transition Program, which provides grants ("Hardship Grants") to those districts which were heavily reliant on ASATR funding, and (ii) provide an Adjustment for Rapid Decline in Taxable Value of Property ("DPV Decline Adjustment") for districts which experienced a decline in their tax base of more than four percent for tax years 2015 and 2016. A district may receive either a Hardship Grant or a DPV Decline Adjustment, but cannot receive both. In a case where a district would have been eligible to receive funding under both programs, the district will receive the greater of the two amounts.

## **2019 Legislative Session**

On January 8, 2019, the 86th Texas Legislature convened in general session which is scheduled to adjourn on May 27, 2019. Thereafter, the Texas Governor may call one or more additional special sessions. During this time, the Texas Legislature may enact laws that materially change current law as it relates to Texas school finance. The District makes no representation regarding any actions the Texas Legislature may take but intends to monitor proposed legislation for any developments applicable to the District.

## **Wealth Transfer Provisions**

Some districts have sufficient property wealth per student in WADA ("wealth per student") to generate their statutory level of funding through collections of local property taxes alone. Districts whose wealth per student generates local property tax collections in excess of their statutory level of funding are referred to as "Chapter 41" districts because they are subject to the wealth equalization provisions contained in Chapter 41 of the Texas Education Code. Chapter 41 districts may receive State funds for certain competitive grants and a few programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program. Otherwise, Chapter 41 districts are not eligible to receive State funding. Furthermore, Chapter 41 districts must exercise certain measures in order to reduce their wealth level to equalized wealth levels of funding, as determined by formulas set forth in the Reform Legislation. For most Chapter 41 districts, this equalization process entails paying the portion of the district's local taxes collected in excess of the equalized wealth levels of funding to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or directly to other school districts with a wealth per student that does not generate local funds sufficient to meet the statutory level of funding, a process known as "recapture".

The equalized wealth levels that subject Chapter 41 districts to recapture for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium are set at (i) \$514,000 per student in WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that does not exceed its compressed tax rate (for most districts, the first \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value) and (ii) \$319,500 per WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that is beyond its compressed rate plus \$0.06 (for most districts, M&O taxes levied above \$1.06 per \$100 in taxable value). So long as the State's equalization program under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code is funded to provide tax revenue equivalent to that raised by the Austin Independent School District on the first six pennies of tax effort that exceed the compressed tax rate, then M&O taxes levied above \$1.00 but at or below \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value ("Golden Pennies") are not subject to the wealth equalization provisions of Chapter 41. Because funding at the Austin Independent School District level is currently being provided to school districts under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code, no recapture is currently associated with the Golden Pennies. Chapter 41 districts with a wealth per student above the lower equalized wealth level but below the higher equalized wealth level must equalize their wealth only with respect to the portion of their M&O tax rate, if any, in excess of \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value. Under Chapter 41, a district has five options to reduce its wealth per student so that it does not exceed the equalized wealth levels: (1) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated district; all property and debt of the consolidating districts vest in the consolidated district; (2) a district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor district; (3) a district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor district by sending money

directly to one or more property-poor districts; or (5) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated taxing district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 41 district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (5) require prior approval by the Chapter 41 district's voters.

A district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective wealth per student is at or below the equalized wealth level. If a district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the district's property wealth per student to the equalized wealth level by detaching certain types of property from the district and annexing the property to a property-poor district or, if necessary, consolidate the district with a property-poor district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring district's existing debt. The Commissioner has not been required to detach property in the absence of a district failing to select another wealth-equalization option.

### **THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT**

The District's wealth per student for the 2018-19 school year is less than the equalized wealth value. Accordingly, the District has not been required to exercise one of the permitted wealth equalization options. As a district with wealth per student less than the equalized wealth value, the District may benefit in the future by agreeing to accept taxable property or funding assistance from or agreeing to consolidate with a property-rich district to enable such district to reduce its wealth per student to the permitted level.

A district's wealth per student must be tested for each future school year and, if it exceeds the maximum permitted level, must be reduced by exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District's wealth per student should exceed the maximum permitted level in future school years, it will be required each year to exercise one or more of the wealth reduction options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district's combined property tax base, and the District's ratio of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of the annexing district.

### **THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM**

*The information below concerning the State Permanent School Fund and the Guarantee Program for school district bonds has been provided by the Texas Education Agency and is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness by, and is not construed as a representation by the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser.*

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

#### **History and Purpose**

The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a three member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and two citizen members, one appointed by the Governor and one by the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General"). As of August 31, 2018, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 23% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2018 distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated \$247 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF was \$1,235.8 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2018, as filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2018 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2018 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2018, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2018 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2018 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/) and with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org). Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at [www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml](http://www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml). A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

### **2019 Texas Legislative Session**

The Texas Legislature commenced its 86th Regular Session on January 8, 2019, and that session (the "86th Session") must conclude by May 28, 2019. As of March 8, 2019, the deadline for the unrestricted filing of most bills and joint resolutions in the 86th Legislature, several bills and resolutions that could potentially affect the management and investment of the PSF had been filed. Not all of the filed legislation is consistent with other filed legislation, and the prospects for passage of certain of the bills may be dependent upon other legislation that relates to funding public school finance in the State. In some instances multiple bills covering the same subject, and which are identical or substantially similar to other proposed legislation affecting the PSF, have been filed. TEA is unable to predict whether any such legislation will be enacted during the 86th Regular Session or, if enacted and subject to future voter referenda, if those referenda will be approved.

Among the filed legislation are at least three resolutions that if passed by the Legislature would submit referenda to the voters of the State in November 2019 for the purpose of amending provisions of the Texas Constitution that provide authority for PSF operations and management or that otherwise pertain to the PSF. One proposed constitutional amendment would increase the amount that may be transferred to the ASF by the GLO from \$300 million to \$600 million in each year. The other proposed constitutional amendment, together with its proposed enabling legislation, would (i) establish the constitutional purpose of the PSF to maximize revenue distributions to the ASF from PSF, (ii) create a new constitutional fund to be known as the Bicentennial Education Fund (the "BEF"), comprised of distributions from the PSF or other funds authorized or appropriated by the Legislature to provide for merit-based teach pay and for incentivizing scholastic achievement among historically underperforming student groups, (iii) authorize the Legislature to create a new nine-member organization proposed to be called the Texas Education Investment Management Organization to which the powers relating to the management of the PSF now assigned to the SBOE would be transferred, and giving the Governor the power to appoint the members and (iv) limiting the amount of uninvested money that may be retained by the GLO; limiting the investment powers of the GLO to the management of non-commercial real estate and mineral rights; and changing the composition and manner of appointment of the SLB. This latter proposed amendment maintains the limitations on the annual distributions that may be made to the ASF as described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment," but not for distributions to the BEF, and provides that in making transfers to the ASF and the BEF the organization managing the PSF shall coordinate such distributions to ensure sufficient funding is available to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program. A third resolution proposes a constitutional amendment to permit casino gambling at certain locations in the State to provide additional funding for, among other entities, the PSF. Other bills relate to open-enrollment charter schools, including provisions for the winding up of affairs for charter schools that lose their State charter and requiring charter districts that issue bonds to submit an application for review of the bonds to the Texas Bond Review Board.

### **The Total Return Constitutional Amendment**

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property

(the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009) ("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in 2018. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The 2004 asset allocation policy decreased the fixed income target from 45% to 25% of Fund investment assets and increased the allocation for equities from 55% to 75% of investment assets. Subsequent asset allocation policies have continued to diversify Fund assets, and have added an alternative asset allocation to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, from 2016, which was reviewed and reaffirmed in June 2018, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 35% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 13%, international equities at 14% and emerging international equities at 3%) and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 5%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 19% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds and a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency) and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 46% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 13%, a real estate allocation of 10%, an absolute return allocation of 10%, a risk parity allocation of 7% and a real return allocation of 6%). The 2016 asset allocation decreased U.S. large cap equities and international equities by 3% and 2%, respectively, and increased the allocations for private equity and real estate by 3% and 2%, respectively.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2016 modifications, have been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2018, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 40.52% in public market equity investments; 13.25% in fixed income investments; 10.35% in absolute return assets; 9.16% in private equity assets; 7.47% in real estate assets; 6.78% in risk parity assets; 5.95% in real return assets; 6.21% in emerging market debt; and 0.31% in unallocated cash.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs with respect to those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual pay-out from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has resulted in greater volatility of

the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, changes in international trade policies, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff, which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

### **Management and Administration of the Fund**

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a "Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the three-member SLB, which consists of the elected Commissioner of the GLO, an appointee of the Governor, and an appointee of the Attorney General. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

### **Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program**

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16,

2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds," below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017 and increased again to 3.75 times effective September 1, 2017; however, as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the SBOE took action at its Winter 2018 meeting to rollback a portion of the multiplier increase, which became effective in late March 2018. Based upon the cost basis of the Fund at August 31, 2018, the State Law Capacity increased from \$111,568,711,072 on August 31, 2017 to \$118,511,255,268 on August 31, 2018 (but at such date the IRS Limit was lower, \$117,318,653,038, so it is the currently effective capacity limit for the Fund).

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/), which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF, among other factors, could adversely affect the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Proposed IRS Regulations will likely result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

### **The School District Bond Guarantee Program**

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax

rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

### **The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Rules"). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a "charter district" and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of February 27, 2019 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 5.85%. As of April 1, 2019, there were 181 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 759 charter school campuses operating under such charters (though as of such date, 11 of such campuses have not begun serving students for various reasons). Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program." The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of



\$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purposes described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

Beginning in July 2015, TEA began limiting new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to the Act and, subsequently, with CDBGP Rules that require the maintenance of a capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Following the increase in the Program multiplier in February 2016 and the update of the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census in March 2016, some new capacity became available under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but that capacity was quickly exhausted. In accordance with the action of the SBOE on February 3, 2017, additional capacity for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective in two increments, implemented on March 1, 2017 and on September 1, 2017 (as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," an item to reverse the September 1, 2017 increase in the Program multiplier was approved by the SBOE at its Winter 2018 meeting). In addition, legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modifies the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Capacity"), which further increases the amount of the CDBGP Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program" and "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program." Other factors that could increase the CDBGP Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBGP Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

### **2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The CDBGP Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at <http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0>. SB 1480 modified how the CDBGP Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBGP Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of February 28, 2019, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 68.64% of the IRS Limit (which is currently the applicable capacity limit) for the Guarantee Program (based on unaudited data). SB 1480 amended the CDBGP Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBGP Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBGP Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBGP Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 5.85% in February 2019, representing a cumulative growth during that period of 2.32%. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBGP Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBGP Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBGP Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see "Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program") or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBGP expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBGP Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. In September 2017 and June 2018, the SBOE authorized the full 20% increase in the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed for fiscal years 2018 and 2019, respectively, which increases the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for those fiscal years.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBGP Capacity effected thereby, at Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE approved the second of two required readings amending the SDBGP Rules to rollback the multiplier from 3.75 times market value to 3.50 times, and the rollback became effective in late March 2018.



In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBG Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75 percent of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections 39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBG Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to three percent (3.00%) of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of February 28, 2019, the Charter District Reserve Fund represented approximately 0.86% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but effective April 1 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred to the PSF division of TEA, where it will be held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

### **Charter District Risk Factors**

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, under current law, open-enrollment charter schools generally do not receive a dedicated funding allocation from the State to assist with the construction and acquisition of new facilities. However, during the 85th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2017, legislation was enacted that, for the first time, provided a limited appropriation in the amount of \$60 million for the 2018-2019 biennium for charter districts having an acceptable performance rating. A charter district that receives funding under this program may use the funds to lease or pay property taxes imposed on an instructional facility; to pay debt service on bonds that financed an instructional facility; or for any other purpose related to the purchase, lease, sale, acquisition, or maintenance of an instructional facility. Charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF. At February 28, 2019, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$14,519,560.

### **Potential Impact of Hurricane Harvey on the PSF**

Hurricane Harvey struck coastal Texas on August 26, 2017, resulting in historic levels of rainfall. The Governor designated the impacted area for disaster relief, and TEA believes that the storm impacted more than 1.3 million students enrolled in some 157 school districts, and approximately 58,000 students in 27 charter schools in the designated area. Many of the impacted school districts and two charter districts have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. It is possible that the affected districts will need to borrow to repair or replace damaged facilities, which could require increased bond issuance and applications to the TEA for PSF bond guarantees. In addition, the storm damage and any lingering economic damage in the area could adversely affect the tax base (for school districts) and credit quality of school districts and charter districts with bonds that are or will be guaranteed by the PSF.

The TEA, members of the Legislature and the Governor, among others, have stated that they are developing programs to provide financial assistance to affected school districts and charter districts, particularly with regard to funding assistance for facility repairs and construction and to offset tax base and/or revenue loss to affected districts. Legislation has been introduced in the 86th Session, that, if adopted, would provide \$634.2 million for an adjustment to school district property values and reimbursement for disaster remediation costs as a result of Hurricane Harvey, although the TEA is unable to predict whether that legislation or any similar legislation will be enacted. For fiscal year 2018, TEA initiated programs designed to hold school districts and charter districts harmless for the loss of State funding associated with declines in average daily attendance. In the past, storm damage has caused multiple year impacts to affected schools with respect to both attendance figures and tax base (for school districts). In June 2018 TEA received results of a survey of tax appraisal districts in the area affected by the hurricane with respect to the impact of the hurricane on the tax rolls of affected school districts. In aggregate, the tax rolls of affected districts appear to have increased slightly for fiscal 2018 over 2017, but the increases were at a lower rate than had been anticipated in the State's general appropriation act for the biennium. TEA notes that as of June 2018 the negative effect of the hurricane on the average daily attendance of districts in the affected area appears to have been less than TEA had initially anticipated.

Many of the school districts and two charter districts in the designated disaster area have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. TEA notes that no district has applied for financial exigency or failed to timely pay bond payments as a result of the hurricane or otherwise. The PSF is managed to maintain liquidity for any draws on the program. Moreover, as described under "The School District Bond Guarantee Program" and "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," both parts of the Bond Guarantee Program operate in accordance with the Act as "intercept" programs, providing liquidity for guaranteed bonds, and draws on the PSF are required to be restored from the first State money payable to a school district or a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds.

#### Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program

Moody's Investors Service, Inc., S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings, Inc. rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF "Aaa," "AAA" and "AAA," respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See "RATING" herein.

#### Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds

##### Permanent School Fund Valuations

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Book Value <sup>(1)</sup>	Market Value <sup>(1)</sup>
2014	\$27,596,692,541	\$38,445,519,225
2015	29,081,052,900	36,196,265,273
2016	30,128,037,903	37,279,799,335
2017	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573
2018 <sup>(2)</sup>	33,860,358,647	44,074,197,940

<sup>(1)</sup> SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

<sup>(2)</sup> At August 31, 2018, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.4 million, \$238.8 million, \$2,983.3 million, \$7.5 million, and \$4,247.3 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$2,022.8 million, \$661.1 million, \$3,126.7 million, \$4.2 million, and \$4,247.3 million, respectively. At February 28, 2019, the PSF had a book value of \$34,591,393,263 and a market value of \$43,844,459,807. February 28, 2019 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

##### Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds

At 8/31	Principal Amount <sup>(1)</sup>
2014	\$58,364,350,783
2015	63,955,449,047
2016	68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023
2018	79,080,901,069 <sup>(2)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> As of August 31, 2018 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$126,346,333,815, of which \$47,265,432,746 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2018, there were \$79,080,901,069 in principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, and using the IRS Limit at that date of \$117,318,653,038 (the IRS Limit is currently the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity), 97.35% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 2.65% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

**Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category<sup>(1)</sup>**

Fiscal Year Ended	School District Bonds		Charter District Bonds		Totals	
	No. of <u>8/31</u> <u>Issues</u>	Principal <u>Amount</u>	No. of <u>Issues</u>	Principal <u>Amount</u>	No. of <u>Issues</u>	Principal <u>Amount</u>
2014 <sup>(2)</sup>	2,869	\$58,061,805,783	10	\$302,545,000	2,879	\$58,364,350,783
2015	3,089	63,197,514,047	28	757,935,000	3,117	63,955,449,047
2016	3,244	67,342,303,445	35	961,025,000	3,279	68,303,328,445
2017	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023
2018 <sup>(3)</sup>	3,249	77,647,966,069	44	1,432,935,000	3,293	79,080,901,069

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> Fiscal 2014 was the first year of operation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

<sup>(3)</sup> At February 28, 2019 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$80,561,386,358 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,249 school district issues, aggregating \$78,837,331,358 in principal amount and 46 charter district issues, aggregating \$1,694,055,000 in principal amount. At February 28, 2019, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was \$3,265,722,717 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment).

**Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018**

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2018, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2018, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the three-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2018, the Fund balance was \$44.0 billion, an increase of \$2.6 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested. During the year, the SBOE continued implementing the long-term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund. The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2018, were 7.23%, 7.68% and 6.92%, respectively (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, five-year, and ten-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) real assets, including cash, were 8.69%, 7.78%, and 4.23%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2018, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2018, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$4.2 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$5.2 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2018, totaled \$1.5 billion in real estate investments and \$2.1 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2018, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.6 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns of 19.83%, 23.95%, 3.51%, and -1.07%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018. The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of -0.78% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 6.66%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 12.01% and 15.94%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 3.43%, while real return assets yielded 0.70%. Emerging market debt produced a return of -11.40%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return of 7.23% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018, out-performing the benchmark index of 6.89% by approximately 34 basis points. All PSF(SLB) real assets (including cash) returned 8.69% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2018.

For fiscal year 2018, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$4.0 billion, a decrease of \$1.4 billion from fiscal year 2017 earnings of \$5.4 billion. This decrease reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2018. In fiscal year 2018, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external

management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, decreased 17.1% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2018. This decrease is primarily attributable to a decrease in PSF(SLB) quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2017 and 2018, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.1 billion and \$1.2 billion, respectively. There were no contributions to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal years 2017 and 2018.

At the end of the 2018 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$79.1 billion in bonds issued by 858 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 7,242 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$176.4 billion in principal amount. During the 2018 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program remained flat at 3,293. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$4.8 billion or 6.5%. The State Capacity Limit increased by \$6.9 billion, or 6.2%, during fiscal year 2018 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund used to calculate that Program capacity limit. The effective capacity of the Program increased by only \$5.7 billion, or 5.2%, during fiscal year 2018 as the IRS Limit was reached during the fiscal year, and it is the lower of the two State and federal capacity limits for the Program.

### **2011 Constitutional Amendment**

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment" the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3%, 3.5% and 3.7% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015, 2016-2017 and 2018-2019, respectively. In November 2018, the SBOE approved a \$2.2 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2020-2021, to be made in equal monthly increments of \$92.2 million, which represents a 2.981% Distribution Rate for the biennium and a per student distribution of \$220.97, based on 2018 preliminary student average daily attendance of 5,004,998. In making the 2020-2021 biennium distribution decision, the SBOE took into account a commitment of the SLB transfer \$10 to the PSF in fiscal year 2020 and \$45 million in fiscal year 2021.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period has been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provide authority to the GLO or any other entity other than the SBOE that has responsibility for the management of land or other properties of the Fund to determine whether to transfer an amount each year from Fund assets to the ASF revenue derived from such land or properties, with the amount transferred limited to \$300 million. Any amount transferred to the ASF by an entity other than the SBOE is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

### **Other Events and Disclosures**

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in April 2018. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund.

Since 2007, TEA has made supplemental appropriation requests to the Legislature for the purpose of funding the implementation of the 2008 Asset Allocation Policy, but those requests have been denied or partly funded. In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an \$18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of \$11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in

accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2016 and 2017, respectively, and \$30.4 million for each of the fiscal years 2018 and 2019.

As of August 31, 2018, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

### **PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking**

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund\\_Disclosure\\_Statement\\_-\\_Bond\\_Guarantee\\_Program/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_Statement_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/). The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on February 1, 2019, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guaranteee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c2-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org), and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <https://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077> or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

### **Annual Reports**

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

### **Event Notices**

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (15) the incurrence of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of the Program, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the Guarantee

Program, any of which reflect financial difficulties. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

### **Availability of Information**

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

### **Limitations and Amendments**

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

### **SEC Exemptive Relief**

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities.

### **TAX RATE LIMITATIONS**

A school district is authorized to levy M&O taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the next two succeeding paragraphs. The maximum voted M&O tax rate for the District is \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation as approved by the voters at an election held on March 10, 1956 pursuant to Article 2784e-1, Texas Revised Civil Statutes Annotated, as amended ("Article 2784e-1").

Article 2784e-1 limits the District's annual M&O tax rate based upon a comparison between the District's outstanding bonded indebtedness and the District's taxable assessed value per \$100 of assessed valuation. Article 2784e-1 provides for a reduction of \$0.10 for each one percent (1%) or major fraction thereof increase in bonded indebtedness beyond seven percent (7%) of assessed valuation of property in the District. This limitation is capped when the District's bonded indebtedness is ten percent (10%) (or greater) of the District's assessed valuation which would result in an annual M&O tax rate not to exceed \$1.20. Lastly, the Texas Attorney General in reviewing the District's transcript of proceedings will allow the District to reduce the amount of its outstanding bonded indebtedness by the amount of funds (on a percentage basis) that the District receives in State assistance for the repayment of this bonded indebtedness (for example, if the District anticipates that it will pay 75% of its bonded indebtedness from State assistance, for the purposes of Article 2784e-1, the Texas Attorney General will assume that only 25% of the District's bonded indebtedness is outstanding and payable from local ad valorem taxes). The bonded indebtedness of the District after the issuance of the Bonds will be approximately 4.54% of the District's current taxable assessed valuation of property. See "APPENDIX A – VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT" herein.

The maximum tax rate per \$100 of assessed valuation that may be adopted by the District may not exceed the lesser of (A) \$1.50, or such lower rate as described in the preceding paragraph, and (B) the sum of (1) the rate of \$0.17, and (2) the product of the "State Compression Percentage" multiplied by \$1.50. The State Compression Percentage has been set, and will remain, at 66.67% for fiscal years 2007-08 through 2018-19. The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For a more detailed description of the State Compression Percentage, see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts". Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the district's "rollback tax rate" without submitting such tax rate to a referendum election and a majority of the voters voting at such election approving the adopted rate.

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of a proposition submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see "THE BONDS – Security").

Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended, requires a district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay debt service on a proposed issue of bonds, together with debt service on other outstanding "new debt" of the district, from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued. In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a district may take into account State allotments to the district which effectively reduces the district's local share of debt service. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. Taxes levied to pay debt service on bonds approved by district voters at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds) are not subject to the foregoing threshold tax rate test. In addition, taxes levied to pay refunding bonds issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, as amended, are not subject to the \$0.50 tax rate test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on such bonds are included in the calculation of the \$0.50 tax rate test as applied to subsequent issues of "new debt." The Bonds are issued as refunding bonds pursuant to Chapter 1207 and are, therefore, not subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on the Bonds are included in the calculation of the \$0.50 tax rate test as applied to subsequent issues of "new debt". Under current law, a district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a district uses projected future taxable values to meet the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. The District has not utilized projected values or State assistance to satisfy the \$0.50 test.

### **DEBT LIMITATIONS**

Under State law, there is no explicit bonded indebtedness limitation, although the tax rate limits described above under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" effectively impose a limit on the incurrence of debt. Such tax rate limits require school districts to demonstrate the ability to pay new debt secured by the district's debt service tax from a tax rate of \$0.50, and to pay all debt and operating expenses which must be paid from receipts of the district's maintenance tax from a tax not to exceed the maintenance tax limit described under the caption "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS." The Bonds are issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, as amended, Texas Government Code, and are not subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test. See also "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS".

### **EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS**

The District's employees participate in a retirement plan (the "Plan") with the State of Texas. The Plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas ("TRS"). State contributions are made to cover costs of the TRS retirement plan up to certain statutory limits. The District is obligated for a portion of TRS costs relating to employee salaries that exceed the statutory limit. Aside from the District's contribution to TRS, the District has no pension fund expenditures or liabilities. For fiscal year ended August 31, 2018, the District made a contribution to TRS on a portion of their employee's salaries that exceeded the statutory minimum. The District generally does not offer any post-employment retirement benefits and has no liabilities for "Other Post Employment Retirement Benefits" as defined in GASB Statement No. 45. For a discussion of the TRS retirement plan, see "NOTE N. DEFINED BENEFIT PENSION PLAN" to the audited financial statements of the District that are attached hereto as Appendix D (the "Financial Statements").

The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care), a cost-sharing, multiple-employer defined benefit postemployment health care plan administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. Contribution requirements to TRS-Care are legally established each biennium by the Texas legislature. See "NOTE Q. SCHOOL DISTRICT RETIREE HEALTH PLAN" attached hereto as Appendix D.

During the year ended August 31, 2018, employees of the District were covered by a fully-insured health insurance plan (the "Health Care Plan"). The District contributed \$225 per month per employee to the Health Care Plan. Employees, at their option, authorize payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents. See "NOTE P. HEALTH CARE" of the Financial Statements.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

### **RATING**

The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"), based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the TEA. The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "A+" by S&P.

An explanation of the significance of such rating may be obtained from S&P. The rating on the Bonds by S&P reflect only the view of said company at the time the rating is given, and the District makes no representations as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that the rating will continue for any given period of time, or that the rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by S&P, if, in the judgment of S&P, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of the rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

The above rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold the Bonds, and such rating may be subject to revision or withdrawal at any time by the rating agency. Any downward revision or withdrawal of the rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

### **LEGAL MATTERS**

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval of the Attorney General of Texas to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the District, and the approving legal opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Dallas, Bond Counsel to the District ("Bond Counsel"), to like effect and to the effect that the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under section 103(a) of the Internal Revenue Code, subject to the matters

described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. The form of Bond Counsel's opinion is attached hereto as Appendix C. The legal fee to be paid to Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds.

Though it represents the Financial Advisor and potentially the Purchaser from time to time in matters unrelated to the issuance of the Bonds, Bond Counsel has been engaged by and only represents the District in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. Except as noted below, Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part in the preparation of this Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained herein except that in its capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information appearing under the captions or subcaptions "PLAN OF FINANCING – Refunded Bonds", "THE BONDS" (except for the information included in the second paragraph under the subcaptions "Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices" and under the subcaptions "Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "Payment Record," as to which no opinion is expressed), and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" (except for the information under the sub-caption "Compliance With Prior Undertakings," as to which no opinion is expressed), and Bond Counsel is of the opinion that the statements and information contained therein fairly and accurately reflect the provisions of the Bond Order; further, Bond Counsel has reviewed the statements and information contained in this Official Statement under the captions and sub-captions "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS," "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM", "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" (first paragraph only), "LEGAL MATTERS", "TAX MATTERS," "LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS," and "REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE," and Bond Counsel is of the opinion that the statements and information contained therein are correct as to matters of law.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

## **TAX MATTERS**

### **Tax Exemption**

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the opinion of Bond Counsel to the effect that interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes (1) is excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the "Code"), of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Code and existing regulations, published rulings, and court decisions, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. The statutes, regulations, rulings, and court decisions on which such opinion is based are subject to change. A form of Bond Counsel's legal opinion appears in Appendix C hereto.

In rendering the foregoing opinions, Bond Counsel will rely upon the representations and certifications of the Issuer made in a certificate dated the date of delivery of the Bonds pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds and will assume continuing compliance by the Issuer with the provisions of the Order subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds. The Order contains covenants by the Issuer with respect to, among other matters, the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the facilities financed or refinanced therewith by persons other than state or local governmental units, the manner in which the proceeds of the Bonds are to be invested, the periodic calculation and payment to the United States Treasury of arbitrage "profits" from the investment of the proceeds, and the reporting of certain information to the United States Treasury. Failure to comply with any of these covenants may cause interest on the Bonds to be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof from the date of the issuance of the Bonds.

Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result, but represents its legal judgment based upon its review of existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions and the representations and covenants of the Issuer described above. No ruling has been sought from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") with respect to the matters addressed in the opinion of Bond Counsel, and Bond Counsel's opinion is not binding on the IRS. The IRS has an ongoing program of auditing the tax-exempt status of the interest on tax-exempt obligations. If an audit of the Bonds is commenced, under current procedures the IRS is likely to treat the Issuer as the "taxpayer," and the owners of the Bonds would have no right to participate in the audit process. In responding to or defending an audit of the tax-exempt status of the interest on the Bonds, the Issuer may have different or conflicting interests from the owners of the Bonds. Public awareness of any audit of the Bonds could adversely affect the value and liquidity of the Bonds during the pendency of the audit, regardless of its ultimate outcome.

Except as described above, Bond Counsel expresses no other opinion with respect to any other federal, state or local tax consequences under present law, or proposed legislation, resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds.

### **Ancillary Tax Consequences**

Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should be aware that the ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust ("FASIT"), and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Prospective purchasers should consult their own tax advisors as to the applicability of these consequences to their particular circumstances.

### **Tax Changes**

Existing law may change to reduce or eliminate the benefit to bondholders of the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Any proposed legislation or administrative action, whether or not taken, could also affect the value and marketability of the Bonds. It is uncertain whether this legislation will be enacted and, if so, whether it will be enacted in its current form. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to any proposed or future changes in tax law.

### **Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount Bonds**

The initial public offering price of certain Bonds (the "Discount Bonds") may be less than the amount payable on such Bonds at maturity. An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Discount Bond (assuming that a



substantial amount of the Discount Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes original issue discount to the initial purchaser of such Discount Bond. A portion of such original issue discount allocable to the holding period of such Discount Bond by the initial purchaser will, upon the disposition of such Discount Bond (including by reason of its payment at maturity), be treated as interest excludable from gross income, rather than as taxable gain, for federal income tax purposes, on the same terms and conditions as those for other interest on the Bonds described above under "Tax Exemption." Such interest is considered to be accrued actuarially in accordance with the constant interest method over the life of a Discount Bond, taking into account the semiannual compounding of accrued interest, at the yield to maturity on such Discount Bond and generally will be allocated to an initial purchaser in a different amount from the amount of the payment denominated as interest actually received by the initial purchaser during the tax year.

However, such interest may be required to be taken into account in determining the amount of the branch profits tax applicable to certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment. In addition, the accrual of such interest may result in certain other collateral federal income tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, owners of an interest in a FASIT, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Moreover, in the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of a Discount Bond by the initial owner prior to maturity, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Discount Bond was held) is includable in gross income.

Owners of Discount Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of accrued original issue discount on Discount Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Discount Bonds. It is possible that, under applicable provisions governing determination of state and local income taxes, accrued interest on Discount Bonds may be deemed to be received in the year of accrual even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment.

### **Tax Accounting Treatment of Premium Bonds**

The initial public offering price of certain Bonds (the "Premium Bonds") may be greater than the amount payable on such Bonds at maturity. An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Premium Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Premium Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes premium to the initial purchaser of such Premium Bonds. The basis for federal income tax purposes of a Premium Bond in the hands of such initial purchaser must be reduced each year by the amortizable bond premium, although no federal income tax deduction is allowed as a result of such reduction in basis for amortizable bond premium. Such reduction in basis will increase the amount of any gain (or decrease the amount of any loss) to be recognized for federal income tax purposes upon a sale or other taxable disposition of a Premium Bond. The amount of premium which is amortizable each year by an initial purchaser is determined by using such purchaser's yield to maturity.

Purchasers of the Premium Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of amortizable bond premium on Premium Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Premium Bonds.

### **Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations**

Section 265 of the Code provides, in general, that interest expense to acquire or carry tax-exempt obligations is not deductible from the gross income of the owner of such obligations. In addition, section 265 of the Code generally disallows 100% of any deduction for interest expense which is incurred by "financial institutions" described in such section and is allocable, as computed in such section, to tax-exempt interest on obligations acquired after August 7, 1986. Section 265(b) of the Code provides an exception to this interest disallowance rule for financial institutions, stating that such disallowance does not apply to interest expense allocable to tax-exempt obligations (other than private activity bonds that are not qualified 501(c)(3) bonds) which are properly designated by an issuer as "qualified tax-exempt obligations." An issuer may designate obligations as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" only if the amount of the issue of which they are a part, when added to the amount of all other tax-exempt obligations (other than private activity bonds that are not qualified 501(c)(3) obligations and other than certain current refunding bonds) issued or reasonably anticipated to be issued by the issuer during the same calendar year, does not exceed \$10,000,000.

The District will designate the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" and will certify its expectation that the above-described \$10,000,000 ceiling will not be exceeded. Accordingly, it is anticipated that financial institutions which purchase the Bonds will not be subject to the 100% disallowance of interest expense allocable to interest on the Bonds under section 265(b) of the Code. However, the deduction for interest expense incurred by a financial institution which is allocable to the interest on the Bonds will be reduced by 20% pursuant to section 291 of the Code.

## **INVESTMENT POLICIES**

### **Investments**

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board of the District. Both State law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.

### **Legal Investments**

Under State law, the District is authorized to invest in obligations meeting the requirements of the Public Funds Investment Act, Texas Government Code, Chapter 2256, as amended (the "PFIA"), which may include: (1) obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, including the Federal Home Loan Banks; (2) direct obligations of the State or its agencies and instrumentalities; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States; (4) other obligations, the principal and interest of which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of, the State or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, including obligations that are fully guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or by the explicit full faith and credit of the United States; (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "A" or its equivalent; (6) bonds issued, assumed or guaranteed by the State of Israel; (7) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or its successor, or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or its successor; (8) interest-bearing banking deposits other than those described by clause (7) if (A) the funds invested in the banking deposits are invested through:

(i) a broker with a main office or branch office in this State that the District selects from a list the governing body or designated investment committee of the entity adopts as required by Section 2256.025, Texas Government Code; or (ii) a depository institution with a main office or branch office in the State that the District selects; (B) the broker or depository institution selected as described by (A) above arranges for the deposit of the funds in the banking deposits in one or more federally insured depository institutions, regardless of where located, for the investing entity's account; (C) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of the banking deposits is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; and (D) the District appoints as its custodian of the banking deposits issued for its account: (i) the depository institution selected as described by (A) above; (ii) an entity described by Section 2257.041(d), Texas Government Code; or (iii) a clearing broker dealer registered with the SEC and operating under Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3; (9) (i) certificates of deposit or share certificates meeting the requirements of the PPIA that are issued by an institution that has its main office or a branch office in the State and are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund, or their respective successors, and are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) or in any other manner and provided for by law for District deposits, or (ii) certificates of deposits where (a) the funds are invested by the District through (A) a broker that has its main office or a branch office in the State and is selected from a list adopted by the District as required by law, or (B) a depository institution that has its main office or branch office in the State that is selected by the District, (b) the broker or the depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of the funds in certificates of deposit in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District, (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States, and (d) the District appoints the depository institution selected under (a) above, a custodian as described by Section 2257.041(d) of the Texas Government Code, or a clearing broker-dealer registered with the SEC and operating pursuant to Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3 (17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c3-3) as custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit; (10) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that have a defined termination date, are secured by a combination of cash and obligations described in clause (1), require the securities being purchased by the District or cash held by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name, and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and are placed through a primary government securities dealer, as defined by the Federal Reserve, or a financial institution doing business in the State; (11) certain bankers' acceptances with the remaining term of 270 days or less, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its parent are rated at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency; (12) commercial paper with a stated maturity of 270 days or less that is rated at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by either (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a United States or state bank; (13) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the SEC that provide the District with a prospectus and other information required by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or the Investment Company Act of 1940 and that comply with Federal Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7 (17 C.F.R. Section 270.2a-7), promulgated under the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80a-1 et seq.); (14) no-load mutual funds registered with the SEC that have an average weighted maturity of less than two years, and either (a) a duration of one year or more and invest exclusively in obligations described under this heading, or (b) a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities; and (15) for bond proceeds, guaranteed investment contracts that have a defined termination date and are secured by obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, other than the prohibited obligations described below, in an amount at least equal to the amount of bond proceeds invested under such contract and are pledged to the District and deposited with the District or a third party selected and approved by the District.

Entities such as the District may enter into securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized including accrued income, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (8), (b) pledged irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than A or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) and clauses (12) and (14) above, or an authorized investment pool; (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to such investing entity or a third party designated by such investing entity; (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State; and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Under State law, the District may contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term of up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance or resolution. The District has not contracted with, and has no present intention of contracting with, any such investment management firm or the State Securities Board to provide such services.

### **Investment Policies**

Under State law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for District funds, maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment owned by the District and the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

State law also requires that District investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the District shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, any additions and changes to market value and the ending value of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the beginning and end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the

investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) State law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the Board.

### **Additional Provisions**

Under State law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies, (2) adopt a rule, order, ordinance or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the respective rule, order, ordinance or resolution, (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the entity to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the District's entire portfolio or requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in no-load mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the District's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

### **Current Investments**

As of February 28, 2019, the District had approximately \$6,197,699 (unaudited) invested at a local bank. The market value of such investments (as determined by the District by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) is approximately 100% of the book value. No funds of the District are invested in derivative securities, i.e., securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

### **REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE**

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

### **FINANCIAL ADVISOR**

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is employed as Financial Advisor to the District to assist in the issuance of the Bonds. In this capacity, the Financial Advisor has compiled certain data relating to the Bonds that is contained in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has not independently verified any of the data contained herein or conducted a detailed investigation of the affairs of the District to determine the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Because of its limited participation, the Financial Advisor assumes no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein. The fee of the Financial Advisor for services with respect to the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and sale of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

### **LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS**

Section 1201.041 of the Public Securities Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code) provides that the Bonds are negotiable instruments governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business and Commerce Code, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State. With respect to investment in the Bonds by municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State, the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, requires that the Bonds be assigned a rating of not less than "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency. See "RATING" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies, and its political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

### **CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION**

In the Bond Order, the District has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). For a description of the continuing disclosure obligations of the TEA, see "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information provided to the

MSRB will be available to the public free of charge via the Electronic Municipal Markets Access ("EMMA") system at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

### **Annual Reports**

The District will provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in this Official Statement in Appendix A (such information being the "Annual Operating Report"). The District will additionally provide financial statements of the District (the "Financial Statements"), that will be (i) prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in Appendix D or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation and shall be in substantially the form included in Appendix D and (ii) audited, if the District commissions and audit of such Financial Statements and the audit is completed within the period during which they must be provided. The District will update and provide the Annual Operating Report within six months after the end of each fiscal year and the Financial Statements within 12 months of the end of each fiscal year, in each case beginning with the fiscal year ending in and after 2019. The District may provide the Financial Statements earlier, including at the time it provides its Annual Operating Report, but if the audit of such Financial Statements is not complete within 12 months after any such fiscal year end, then the District shall file unaudited Financial Statements within such 12-month period and audited Financial Statements for the applicable fiscal year, when and if the audit report on such Financial Statements becomes available.

The District's fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the Annual Operating Report must be provided by the last day of February in each year, and the Financial Statements must be provided by August 31 of each year, unless the District changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB of the change.

The financial information and operating data to be provided may be set forth in full in one or more documents or may be included by specific reference to any document available to the public on the MSRB's Internet Web site or filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as permitted by the Rule. The updated information will include audited financial statements, if the District commissions an audit and it is completed by the required time. If audited financial statements are not available by the required time, the District will provide unaudited financial statements by the required time and will provide audited financial statements when and if such audited financial statements become available. Any such financial statements will be prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in Appendix D or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation.

### **Notice of Certain Events**

The District will also provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds to the MSRB in a timely manner (but not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) appointment of a successor or additional trustee or the change of name of a trustee, if material; (15) incurrence of a debt obligation of the District or a derivative instrument entered into by the District in connection with, or pledged as security or a source of payment for, an existing or planned debt obligation, or a guarantee by the District of any such debt obligation or derivative instrument, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of any such debt obligation, derivative instrument, or guarantee of the District, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of any such debt obligation, derivative instrument, or guarantee of the District, any of which reflect financial difficulties. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide annual financial information in accordance with their agreement described above under "Annual Reports". Neither the Bonds nor the Bond Order make any provision for a bond trustee, debt service reserves, credit enhancement (except for the Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement. The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

For these purposes, (a) any event described in clause (12) of in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District and (b) the District intends the words used in the immediately preceding paragraphs (15) and (16) to have the same meanings as when they are used in the Rule, as evidenced by SEC Release No. 34-83885, dated August 20, 2018.

### **Availability of Information**

The District has agreed to provide the foregoing information only as described above. Investors will be able to access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB free of charge at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

### **Limitations and Amendments**

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that has been provided except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if, (1) the agreement, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell Bonds in the initial primary offering in compliance with the

Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent or (b) any qualified person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provisions of the SEC Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the SEC Rule 15c2-12 are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds. If the District amends its agreement, it has agreed to include with the financial information and operating data next provided, in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and operating data so provided.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made by it in accordance with the Rule.

### **VERIFICATION OF ARITHMETICAL AND MATHEMATICAL COMPUTATIONS**

Public Finance Partners LLC, a firm of independent certified public accountants, will deliver to the District, on or before the settlement date of the Bonds, its verification report indicating that it has verified the mathematical accuracy of (a) the mathematical computations of the adequacy of the cash and the maturing principal of and interest on the Defeasance Securities, to pay, when due or upon early redemption, the principal of, interest on and related call premium requirements, if any, of the Refunded Bonds, and (b) the mathematical computations of yield used by Bond Counsel to support its opinion that interest on the Bonds will be excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Public Finance Partners LLC relied on the accuracy, completeness and reliability of all information provided to it by, and on all decisions and approvals of, the District. In addition, Public Finance Partners LLC has relied on any information provided to it by the District retained advisors, consultants or legal counsel.

### **LITIGATION**

In the opinion of District officials, except as may be described in this Official Statement, the District is not a party to any litigation or other proceeding pending or to their knowledge threatened, in any court, agency or other administrative body (either state or federal) which, if decided adversely to the District, would have a material adverse effect on the financial condition of the District.

At the time of the initial delivery of the Bonds, the District will provide the Purchaser with a certificate to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending challenging the issuance of the Bonds or that affects the payment and security of the Bonds or in any other manner questioning the issuance, sale, or delivery of the Bonds.

### **FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

### **WINNING BIDDER**

On April 24, 2019, the Bonds were awarded to an investment bank or group of investment banks managed by \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Purchaser"). The initial reoffering yields for the Bonds were supplied to the District by the Purchaser. The initial reoffering yields shown on page ii hereof will produce compensation to the Purchaser of approximately \$ \_\_\_\_\_. The District can give no assurance that any trading market will be developed for the Bonds after their sale by the District to the Purchaser. The District has no control over the price at which the Bonds are subsequently sold and the initial yield at which the Bonds will be priced and reoffered will be established by and will be the responsibility of the Purchaser.

### **CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Initial Bonds, the Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the District, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the District contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the District and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the District, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the District believes to be reliable and the District has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; and (d) there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the District, since August 31, 2018, the date of the last financial statements of the District appearing in the Official Statement.

## CONCLUDING STATEMENT

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy in any state in which such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer of solicitation.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources which the District considers to be reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will ever be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and the Order contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents, and the Order. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such summarized documents for further information. All information contained in this Official Statement is subject, in all respects, to the complete body of information contained in the original sources thereof and no guaranty, warranty or other representation is made concerning the accuracy or completeness of the information herein. In particular, no opinion or representation is rendered as to whether any projection will approximate actual results, and all opinions, estimates and assumptions, whether or not expressly identified as such, should not be considered statements of fact. Reference is made to official documents in all respects.

References to web site addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such web sites and the information or links contained therein are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, SEC Rule 15c2-12.

In the Order, the Board authorized (i) the Designated Financial Official to approve, for and on behalf of the District, the form and content of this Official Statement, and any addenda, supplemental, or amendment thereto, and (ii) the Purchaser's use of this Official Statement in connection with the public offering and sale of the Bonds.

---

Designated Financial Official  
Elkhart Independent School District

**ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**Schedule I - Schedule of Refunded Bonds\***

**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2009**

<b>Maturities Being Redeemed</b>	<b>Original CUSIP</b>	<b>Principal Amount Outstanding</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Principal Amount Being Refunded</b>	<b>Call Date</b>	<b>Principal Amount Unrefunded</b>
8/15/2020	287677HS0	\$ 135,000.00	5.000%	\$ 135,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2021	287677HT8	145,000.00	5.000%	145,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2022	287677HU5	150,000.00	5.000%	150,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2023	287677HV3	160,000.00	5.000%	160,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2024	287677HW1	165,000.00	5.000%	165,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2025	287677HX9	175,000.00	5.000%	175,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2026	287677HY7	185,000.00	5.000%	185,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2027	287677HZ4	195,000.00	5.000%	195,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2028	287677JA7	200,000.00	5.000%	200,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2029	287677JB5	210,000.00	5.000%	210,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2030	287677JC3	225,000.00	4.625%	225,000.00	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2031		235,000.00	4.625%	235,000.00 <sup>(1)</sup>	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2032		245,000.00	4.625%	245,000.00 <sup>(1)</sup>	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2033	287677JD1	260,000.00	4.625%	260,000.00 <sup>(1)</sup>	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2034		275,000.00	4.750%	275,000.00 <sup>(2)</sup>	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2035		285,000.00	4.750%	285,000.00 <sup>(2)</sup>	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2036	287677JE9	300,000.00	4.750%	300,000.00 <sup>(2)</sup>	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2037		320,000.00	5.000%	320,000.00 <sup>(3)</sup>	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2038		335,000.00	5.000%	335,000.00 <sup>(3)</sup>	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
8/15/2039	287677JF6	350,000.00	5.000%	350,000.00 <sup>(3)</sup>	August 15, 2019 @ Par	-
		<u>\$ 4,550,000.00</u>		<u>\$ 4,550,000.00</u>		<u>\$ -</u>

\*Preliminary, subject to change.

(1) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$740,000 that matures August 15, 2033.

(2) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$860,000 that matures August 15, 2036.

(3) Represents a mandatory sinking fund redemption of the term bond outstanding in the principal amount of \$1,005,000 that matures August 15, 2039.

**APPENDIX A**  
**FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT**



# ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

## Financial Information

### ASSESSED VALUATION <sup>(1)</sup>

2018/19 Total Valuation.....	\$	513,190,108
Less Exemptions & Deductions <sup>(2)</sup> :		
State Homestead Exemption	\$	36,530,089
State Over-65 Exemption		6,084,974
Disabled Exemption		3,245,236
Veterans Exemption		729,485
Pollution Control Exemption		342,370
Productivity Loss		169,884,837
Homestead Cap Loss		809,103
	\$	217,626,094
2018/19 Net Taxable Valuation .....	\$	295,564,014

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division. The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES -- Residential homestead Exemptions" in the Official Statement.

<sup>(2)</sup> Excludes the values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers, which totaled \$14,201,030 in 2018/19.

### VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT

Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding	\$	13,760,000
Less: The Refunded Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>		(4,550,000)
Plus: The Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>		4,550,000
Total Unlimited Tax Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>		13,760,000
Less: Interest & Sinking Fund Balance (As of August 31, 2018) <sup>(2)</sup>		(353,394)
Net General Obligation Debt	\$	13,406,606

Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation <sup>(3)</sup> 4.54%

2019 Population Estimate <sup>(4)</sup>	5,655
Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation	\$52,266
Per Capita Net G.O. Debt	\$2,371

<sup>(1)</sup> Preliminary, subject to change.

<sup>(2)</sup> Source: Elkhart ISD Audited Financial Statements.

<sup>(3)</sup> The ratio of Net General Obligations to Net Taxable Valuation above does not include the Maintenance Tax Notes which are payable solely from the limited maintenance and operations tax or other lawfully available funds of the District (See "OTHER OBLIGATIONS - MAINTENANCE TAX NOTES" in this Appendix A.) The ratio also does not include a portion of the District's outstanding debt service that is payable from any debt subsidies that may be provided by the State of Texas. The District expects to receive state funding assistance for voted bond debt service equal to approximately 29% of its debt service requirements for its voted bond unlimited tax debt service for the 2018/19 fiscal year. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018" in Appendix D for more information relative to the District's obligations.

<sup>(4)</sup> Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

### PROPERTY TAX RATES AND COLLECTIONS

Fiscal Year	Net		% Collections <sup>(3)</sup>	
	Taxable Valuation	Tax Rate	Current <sup>(4)</sup>	Total <sup>(4)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 162,993,328 <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 1.3700 <sup>(5)</sup>	93.48%	99.65%
2007/08	183,040,768 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700 <sup>(5)</sup>	94.50%	100.54%
2008/09	236,787,466 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	94.48%	101.04%
2009/10	235,227,141 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	95.19%	99.02%
2010/11	244,205,496 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	95.84%	99.99%
2011/12	258,931,526 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	94.82%	97.45%
2012/13	287,639,871 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	96.51%	101.00%
2013/14	285,454,447 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	95.22%	98.52%
2014/15	305,695,522 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	95.57%	99.93%
2015/16	262,857,720 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.1700	95.66%	100.25%
2016/17	254,733,010 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.1700	95.66%	99.51%
2017/18	273,406,380 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.1700	95.68%	98.71%
2018/19	295,564,014 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.1700	(In Process of Collection)	

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

<sup>(2)</sup> The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

<sup>(3)</sup> Source: Elkhart ISD Audited Financial Statements.

<sup>(4)</sup> Excludes penalties and interest.

<sup>(5)</sup> The declines in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax for the 2006/07 and 2007/08 fiscal years are a function of House Bill 1 adopted by the Texas Legislature in May 2006. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**TAX RATE DISTRIBUTION <sup>(1)</sup>**

	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19
Maintenance & Operations	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700
Debt Service	\$0.1900	\$0.1900	\$0.1900	\$0.1900	\$0.1900
Total Tax Rate	\$1.3600	\$1.3600	\$1.3600	\$1.3600	\$1.3600

(1) On November 6, 2007, the District successfully held a tax ratification election at which the voters of the District approved a maintenance and operations tax not to exceed \$1.17.

**VALUATION AND FUNDED DEBT HISTORY**

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation	Bond Debt Outstanding	Ratio Debt to A.V. <sup>(1)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 162,993,328	\$ -	0.00%
2007/08	183,040,768	-	0.00%
2008/09	236,787,466	16,000,000	6.76%
2009/10	235,227,141	16,000,000	6.80%
2010/11	244,205,496	16,000,000	6.55%
2011/12	258,931,526	15,765,000	6.09%
2012/13	287,639,871	15,510,000	5.39%
2013/14	285,454,447	15,240,000	5.34%
2014/15	305,695,522	14,950,000	4.89%
2015/16	262,857,720	14,640,000	5.57%
2016/17	254,733,010	14,115,000	5.54%
2017/18	273,406,380	13,760,000	5.03%
2018/19	295,564,014	13,325,000 <sup>(2)</sup>	4.51%

(1) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2018" in Appendix D for more information.

(2) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

**ESTIMATED OVERLAPPING DEBT STATEMENT**

Taxing Body	Amount	Percent Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
Anderson County	\$ 17,210,000	9.59%	\$ 1,650,439
Elkhart, City of	-	100.00%	-
Houston County	9,610,000	0.29%	27,869
Total Overlapping Debt <sup>(1)</sup>			\$ 1,678,308
Elkhart Independent School District <sup>(2) (3)</sup>			13,406,606
Total Direct & Overlapping Debt			\$ 15,084,914
Ratio of Net Direct & Overlapping Debt to Net Taxable Valuation		5.10%	
Per Capita Direct & Overlapping Debt		\$2,668	

(1) Equals gross debt less self-supporting debt.

(2) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds.

(3) Preliminary, subject to change.

Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. The District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information (except for the amounts relating to the District), and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete.

**PRINCIPAL TAXPAYERS <sup>(1)</sup>****2018/19 Top Ten Taxpayers**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
JLA Resources Co.	Oil & Gas	\$ 12,040,729	4.07%
Union Pacific Railroad Co.	Railroad	9,881,335	3.34%
Eagle Railcar Services LP	Railcar Mfg.	5,370,923	1.82%
Minerals Resources Development	Commerical	3,671,189	1.24%
Enbridge Pipelines	Pipeline	3,068,921	1.04%
Oncor Electric Delivery Co. LLC	Electric Utility	2,911,867	0.99%
David Rider	Residential	2,799,365	0.95%
Atmos Energy/Mid-Tex Pipeline	Oil & Gas Pipeline	1,677,982	0.57%
Rhone Real Estate LLC	Real Estate	1,518,659	0.51%
Don H. Wilson Inc.	Oil & Gas	1,381,642	0.47%
		<b>\$ 44,322,612</b>	<b>15.00%</b>

**2017/18 Top Ten Taxpayers**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
JLA Resources Co.	Oil & Gas	\$ 13,123,258	4.80%
Union Pacific Railroad Co.	Railroad	9,299,689	3.40%
Eagle Railcar Services LP	Railcar Mfg.	5,863,162	2.14%
Minerals Resources Development	Commerical	4,058,046	1.48%
Enbridge Pipelines	Pipeline	3,875,186	1.42%
Oncor Electric Delivery Co. LLC	Electric Utility	2,642,526	0.97%
David Rider	Residential	2,595,824	0.95%
Atmos Energy/Mid-Tex Pipeline	Oil & Gas Pipeline	1,563,668	0.57%
Rhone Real Estate LLC	Real Estate	1,465,264	0.54%
Oneok Sterling III Pipeline	Oil & Gas	1,196,814	0.44%
		<b>\$ 45,683,437</b>	<b>16.71%</b>

**2016/17 Top Ten Taxpayers**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
Union Pacific Railroad Co.	Railroad	\$ 8,744,402	3.43%
JLA Resources Co.	Oil & Gas	6,123,127	2.40%
Eagle Railcar Services LP	Railcar Mfg.	5,863,162	2.30%
Enbridge Pipelines	Pipeline	3,995,891	1.57%
Oncor Electric Delivery Co. LLC	Electric Utility	2,676,093	1.05%
Forestar Minerals LLC	Oil & Gas	2,460,966	0.97%
David Rider	Residential	1,780,228	0.70%
EDC AG Products Co. LLC	Food Products	1,363,390	0.54%
Oneok Sterling III Pipeline	Oil & Gas	1,210,473	0.48%
Samuel Nat Coleman	Residential	1,186,226	0.47%
		<b>\$ 35,403,958</b>	<b>13.90%</b>

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

**CLASSIFICATION OF ASSESSED VALUATION BY USE CATEGORY <sup>(1)</sup>**

<b>Category</b>	<b>2018/19</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>2017/18</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>2016/17</b>	<b>% of Total</b>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 89,665,642	17.47%	\$ 87,848,369	17.62%	\$ 87,534,175	18.34%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	753,442	0.15%	757,153	0.15%	622,085	0.13%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	173,493	0.03%	185,976	0.04%	158,388	0.03%
Real, Acreage	180,080,698	35.09%	174,571,667	35.02%	172,839,458	36.21%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	153,241,885	29.86%	144,935,911	29.07%	140,505,504	29.44%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	20,062,555	3.91%	18,797,276	3.77%	14,790,384	3.10%
Oil & Gas	21,820,400	4.25%	23,102,537	4.63%	12,003,677	2.51%
Utilities	23,511,474	4.58%	23,861,279	4.79%	22,882,506	4.79%
Tangible Personal, Commercial & Industrial	12,559,470	2.45%	13,631,370	2.73%	15,290,089	3.20%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	11,178,126	2.18%	10,660,744	2.14%	10,510,552	2.20%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	22,304	0.00%	22,304	0.00%	22,304	0.00%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	120,619	0.02%	133,298	0.03%	144,784	0.03%
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 513,190,108</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 498,507,884</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 477,303,906</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 809,103		\$ 436,722		\$ 283,012	
Productivity Loss	169,884,837		163,884,299		162,641,724	
Exemptions	46,932,154 <sup>(2)</sup>		46,690,777 <sup>(2)</sup>		45,452,925 <sup>(2)</sup>	
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>\$ 217,626,094</u>		<u>\$ 211,011,798</u>		<u>\$ 208,377,661</u>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 295,564,014</b>		<b>\$ 287,496,086</b>		<b>\$ 268,926,245</b>	

<b>Category</b>	<b>2015/16</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>2014/15</b>	<b>% of Total</b>	<b>2013/14</b>	<b>% of Total</b>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 86,958,183	17.77%	\$ 86,673,926	16.82%	\$ 86,248,626	17.47%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	646,061	0.13%	593,305	0.12%	591,805	0.12%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	163,113	0.03%	173,659	0.03%	222,039	0.04%
Real, Acreage	173,460,568	35.45%	171,218,306	33.23%	168,267,093	34.08%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	136,990,910	28.00%	136,971,654	26.58%	132,308,553	26.80%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	14,119,109	2.89%	13,169,303	2.56%	13,049,022	2.64%
Oil & Gas	26,391,012	5.39%	52,883,804	10.26%	42,174,419	8.54%
Utilities	24,754,303	5.06%	27,475,896	5.33%	25,696,735	5.20%
Tangible Personal, Commercial & Industrial	15,949,685	3.26%	16,495,221	3.20%	16,225,495	3.29%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	9,686,021	1.98%	9,454,198	1.83%	8,823,077	1.79%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	22,304	0.00%	22,304	0.00%	-	0.00%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	148,061	0.03%	161,855	0.03%	154,213	0.03%
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 489,289,330</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 515,293,431</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 493,761,077</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 307,519		\$ 357,448		\$ 533,294	
Productivity Loss	164,013,505		161,580,151		159,090,996	
Exemptions	44,302,056 <sup>(2)</sup>		31,196,780		30,776,975	
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>\$ 208,623,080</u>		<u>\$ 193,134,379</u>		<u>\$ 190,401,265</u>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 280,666,250</b>		<b>\$ 322,159,052</b>		<b>\$ 303,359,812</b>	

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

(2) The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

(3) Excludes values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers.

**PRINCIPAL REPAYMENT SCHEDULE**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Bonds	Less: Refunded Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>	Plus: The Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>	Total <sup>(1)</sup>	Bonds Unpaid At Year End	Percent of Principal Retired
2019	\$ 380,000.00	\$ -	\$ 55,000.00	\$ 435,000.00	\$ 13,325,000.00	3.16%
2020	415,000.00	135,000.00	145,000.00	425,000.00	12,900,000.00	6.25%
2021	435,000.00	145,000.00	160,000.00	450,000.00	12,450,000.00	9.52%
2022	460,000.00	150,000.00	160,000.00	470,000.00	11,980,000.00	12.94%
2023	480,000.00	160,000.00	175,000.00	495,000.00	11,485,000.00	16.53%
2024	505,000.00	165,000.00	180,000.00	520,000.00	10,965,000.00	20.31%
2025	530,000.00	175,000.00	190,000.00	545,000.00	10,420,000.00	24.27%
2026	555,000.00	185,000.00	200,000.00	570,000.00	9,850,000.00	28.42%
2027	585,000.00	195,000.00	210,000.00	600,000.00	9,250,000.00	32.78%
2028	610,000.00	200,000.00	215,000.00	625,000.00	8,625,000.00	37.32%
2029	635,000.00	210,000.00	225,000.00	650,000.00	7,975,000.00	42.04%
2030	665,000.00	225,000.00	235,000.00	675,000.00	7,300,000.00	46.95%
2031	690,000.00	235,000.00	245,000.00	700,000.00	6,600,000.00	52.03%
2032	720,000.00	245,000.00	255,000.00	730,000.00	5,870,000.00	57.34%
2033	750,000.00	260,000.00	265,000.00	755,000.00	5,115,000.00	62.83%
2034	800,000.00	275,000.00	260,000.00	785,000.00	4,330,000.00	68.53%
2035	835,000.00	285,000.00	260,000.00	810,000.00	3,520,000.00	74.42%
2036	865,000.00	300,000.00	270,000.00	835,000.00	2,685,000.00	80.49%
2037	910,000.00	320,000.00	275,000.00	865,000.00	1,820,000.00	86.77%
2038	950,000.00	335,000.00	280,000.00	895,000.00	925,000.00	93.28%
2039	<u>985,000.00</u>	<u>350,000.00</u>	<u>290,000.00</u>	<u>925,000.00</u>	-	100.00%
Total	<u>\$ 13,760,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 4,550,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 4,550,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 13,760,000.00</u>		

(1) Preliminary, subject to change.

**OTHER OBLIGATIONS - MAINTENANCE TAX NOTES <sup>(1)</sup>**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Principal	Interest	Total
2019	\$ 50,000.00	\$ 7,716.80	\$ 57,716.80
2020	51,000.00	6,806.80	57,806.80
2021	52,000.00	5,878.60	57,878.60
2022	53,000.00	4,932.20	57,932.20
2023	53,000.00	3,967.60	56,967.60
2024	54,000.00	3,003.00	57,003.00
2025	55,000.00	2,020.20	57,020.20
2026	<u>56,000.00</u>	<u>1,019.20</u>	<u>57,019.20</u>
Total	<u>\$ 424,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 35,344.40</u>	<u>\$ 459,344.40</u>

(1) The obligations shown in this table are payable from the District's limited maintenance and operations tax.

**DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Debt Service <sup>(1)</sup>	Less:	Plus:			Combined Total <sup>(1) (2)</sup>
		Refunded Debt Service <sup>(2)</sup>	The Bonds <sup>(2)</sup>	Interest	Total	
			Principal			
2019	\$ 980,081.26	\$ 110,865.63	\$ 55,000.00	\$ 51,386.11	\$ 106,386.11	\$ 975,601.74
2020	996,081.26	356,731.26	145,000.00	175,125.00	320,125.00	959,475.00
2021	995,331.26	359,981.26	160,000.00	167,875.00	327,875.00	963,225.00
2022	998,581.26	357,731.26	160,000.00	159,875.00	319,875.00	960,725.00
2023	995,581.26	360,231.26	175,000.00	151,875.00	326,875.00	962,225.00
2024	996,581.26	357,231.26	180,000.00	143,125.00	323,125.00	962,475.00
2025	996,331.26	358,981.26	190,000.00	134,125.00	324,125.00	961,475.00
2026	994,831.26	360,231.26	200,000.00	124,625.00	324,625.00	959,225.00
2027	997,081.26	360,981.26	210,000.00	116,125.00	326,125.00	962,225.00
2028	994,781.26	356,231.26	215,000.00	107,725.00	322,725.00	961,275.00
2029	993,381.26	356,231.26	225,000.00	99,125.00	324,125.00	961,275.00
2030	995,881.26	360,731.26	235,000.00	90,125.00	325,125.00	960,275.00
2031	993,975.00	360,325.00	245,000.00	80,725.00	325,725.00	959,375.00
2032	996,043.74	359,456.26	255,000.00	70,925.00	325,925.00	962,512.48
2033	998,087.50	363,125.00	265,000.00	60,725.00	325,725.00	960,687.50
2034	1,018,912.50	366,100.00	260,000.00	50,125.00	310,125.00	962,937.50
2035	1,022,475.00	363,037.50	260,000.00	42,325.00	302,325.00	961,762.50
2036	1,019,687.50	364,500.00	270,000.00	34,525.00	304,525.00	959,712.50
2037	1,029,250.00	370,250.00	275,000.00	26,425.00	301,425.00	960,425.00
2038	1,031,125.00	369,250.00	280,000.00	18,175.00	298,175.00	960,050.00
2039	1,026,312.50	367,500.00	290,000.00	9,425.00	299,425.00	958,237.50
	<u>\$ 21,070,393.86</u>	<u>\$ 7,339,703.25</u>	<u>\$ 4,550,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 1,914,486.11</u>	<u>\$ 6,464,486.11</u>	<u>\$ 20,195,176.72</u>

(1) Preliminary, subject to change.

(2) Based on its wealth per student, the District expects to receive approximately \$275,000 of state financial assistance for the payment of debt service for the fiscal year 2018/19. The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**TAX ADEQUACY WITH RESPECT TO THE DISTRICT'S BONDS**

Projected Maximum Debt Service Requirement <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 975,601.74
Projected State Financial Assistance for Debt Service in 2018/19 <sup>(2)</sup>	275,000.00
Projected Net Debt Service Requirement	\$ 700,601.74
 \$0.24200 Tax Rate @ 98% Collections Produces	 \$ 700,959.62
 2018/19 Net Taxable Valuation	 \$ 295,564,014

(1) Includes the Bonds and excludes the Refunded Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

(2) The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS**

The District does not have authorized but unissued unlimited ad valorem tax bonds from any bond election; however, the District may incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.

**COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF GENERAL FUND REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES**

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31				
	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
<b>Beginning Fund Balance</b>	\$ 4,294,791	\$ 3,338,237	\$ 3,484,681	\$ 3,141,081	\$ 3,307,457
<b>Revenues:</b>					
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 3,509,533	\$ 3,733,105	\$ 3,308,493	\$ 3,107,331	\$ 3,464,927
State Sources	6,284,850	6,904,711	7,161,059	7,708,643	8,315,130
Federal Sources & Other	25,866	37,386	30,625	125,323	11,774
<b>Total Revenues</b>	<b>\$ 9,820,249</b>	<b>\$ 10,675,202</b>	<b>\$ 10,500,177</b>	<b>\$ 10,941,297</b>	<b>\$ 11,791,831</b>
<b>Expenditures:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 5,326,206	\$ 5,689,199	\$ 6,124,866	\$ 6,182,644	\$ 6,655,139
Instructional Resources & Media Services	169,223	162,540	170,440	165,614	168,462
Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	-	-	1,843	5,978	1,783
Instructional Leadership	70,137	71,649	72,585	73,238	75,642
School Leadership	577,465	595,300	592,293	600,517	597,153
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	183,167	188,706	190,126	194,742	197,451
Health Services	35,951	36,779	42,251	51,477	43,165
Student (Pupil) Transportation	471,379	390,110	492,094	429,553	428,003
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	487,035	506,313	560,978	519,138	539,630
General Administration	447,823	447,709	574,499	518,702	486,586
Facilities Maintenance and Operations	1,162,972	1,202,133	1,238,276	1,161,244	1,239,698
Security and Monitoring Services	-	-	-	-	1,453
Data Processing Services	153,547	157,287	283,131	172,876	150,857
Community Services	1,089	1,000	450	750	500
Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	-	20,000	-	-
Principal on Long Term Debt	-	-	-	47,000	49,000
Interest on Long Term Debt	-	-	-	10,121	8,609
Facilities Acquisition and Construction	1,222,119	467,912	341,743	46,384	10,600
Payments to Shared Service Agreements	124,286	233,532	264,478	299,627	262,108
Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed. Prg.	-	16,700	3,490	10,318	27,001
Other Intergovernmental Charges	69,390	73,568	64,410	49,998	68,802
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<b>\$ 10,501,789</b>	<b>\$ 10,240,437</b>	<b>\$ 11,037,953</b>	<b>\$ 10,539,921</b>	<b>\$ 11,011,642</b>
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues over Expenditures	\$ (681,540)	\$ 434,765	\$ (537,776)	\$ 401,376	\$ 780,189
<b>Other Resources and (Uses):</b>					
Transfers In	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 103,650	\$ 9,600
Transfers Out	(275,014)	(288,321)	(325,824)	(338,650)	(467,768)
Non-Current Loans	-	-	520,000	-	-
<b>Total Other Resources (Uses)</b>	<b>\$ (275,014)</b>	<b>\$ (288,321)</b>	<b>\$ 194,176</b>	<b>\$ (235,000)</b>	<b>\$ (458,168)</b>
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues and Other Sources over Expenditures and Other Uses	\$ (956,554)	\$ 146,444	\$ (343,600)	\$ 166,376	\$ 322,021
<b>Ending Fund Balance</b>	<b>\$ 3,338,237</b>	<b>\$ 3,484,681</b>	<b>\$ 3,141,081</b>	<b>\$ 3,307,457</b>	<b>\$ 3,629,478</b>

(1) See "MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS - Economic Factors and Next Year's Budgets and Rates" in Appendix D hereto for a discussion of the 2018/19 budget and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Wealth Transfer Provisions" in the Official Statement.

**CHANGE IN NET ASSETS <sup>(1)</sup>**

	<b>Fiscal Year Ended August 31</b>				
	<b>2014</b>	<b>2015</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2018</b>
<b>Revenues:</b>					
<b>Program Revenues:</b>					
Charges for Services	\$ 251,860	\$ 272,945	\$ 326,161	\$ 314,647	\$ 311,493
Operating Grants and Contributions	1,046,200	1,134,517	1,563,696	1,521,208	(428,940)
<b>General Revenues:</b>					
Property Taxes Levied for General Purposes	3,315,619	3,529,820	3,076,705	2,939,418	3,164,497
Property Taxes Levied for Debt Service	539,291	577,647	500,458	478,594	516,063
State Aid - Formula Grants	5,993,057	6,707,113	6,940,121	7,476,891	7,792,346
Investment Earnings	31,102	6,156	11,014	11,014	15,085
Grants and Contributions Not Restricted	99,170	4,237	-	99,090	-
Miscellaneous	144,903	140,778	127,047	110,093	280,492
<b>Total Revenue</b>	<b>\$ 11,421,202</b>	<b>\$ 12,373,213</b>	<b>\$ 12,545,202</b>	<b>\$ 12,950,955</b>	<b>\$ 11,651,036</b>
<b>Expenses:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 6,100,777	\$ 6,436,882	\$ 7,324,012	\$ 7,504,904	\$ 5,320,813
Instruction Resources & Media Services	190,947	182,615	197,580	169,768	107,973
Curriculum & Staff Development	31,005	34,520	33,892	36,079	34,560
Instructional Leadership	70,188	71,699	73,522	74,175	76,579
School Leadership	590,225	600,955	630,736	619,874	377,141
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	186,197	189,244	204,131	202,093	123,275
Health Services	38,187	38,687	45,638	53,431	28,416
Student Transportation	473,607	478,290	469,400	498,005	381,701
Food Service	451,309	529,030	544,269	508,874	577,438
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	689,600	726,163	796,940	670,854	566,970
General Administration	448,760	443,697	610,723	539,739	346,979
Facilities Maintenance & Operations	1,164,203	1,187,129	1,310,847	1,245,026	1,160,292
Security and Monitoring Services	6,768	6,689	6,796	6,795	11,319
Data Processing Services	153,547	156,151	172,346	154,212	113,982
Community Services	1,089	1,000	450	750	500
Interest on Long-Term Debt	736,576	718,716	702,235	613,129	593,799
Bond Issuance Costs and Fees	-	-	20,000	100,186	500
Capital Outlay	-	-	846	-	-
Payments to Shared Service Agreements	124,286	233,532	264,478	299,627	262,108
Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed. Prg.	-	16,700	3,490	10,318	27,001
Other Intergovernmental Charges	69,390	73,568	64,410	49,998	68,802
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<b>\$ 11,526,661</b>	<b>\$ 12,125,267</b>	<b>\$ 13,476,741</b>	<b>\$ 13,357,837</b>	<b>\$ 10,180,148</b>
<b>Change in Net Assets</b>	<b>\$ (105,459)</b>	<b>\$ 247,946</b>	<b>\$ (931,539)</b>	<b>\$ (406,882)</b>	<b>\$ 1,470,888</b>
<b>Beginning Net Assets</b>	<b>\$ 14,440,130</b>	<b>\$ 14,334,671</b>	<b>\$ 13,936,751</b>	<b>\$ 13,005,212</b>	<b>\$ 12,598,330</b>
<b>Prior Period Adjustment</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ (645,866) <sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ (6,056,883) <sup>(3)</sup></b>
<b>Ending Net Assets</b>	<b>\$ 14,334,671</b>	<b>\$ 13,936,751</b>	<b>\$ 13,005,212</b>	<b>\$ 12,598,330</b>	<b>\$ 8,012,335</b>

(1) The foregoing information represents government-wide financial information provided in accordance with GASB 34, which the District adopted for the 2002 fiscal year.

(2) In 2015, an adjustment has been made to the prior period as a result of restating the District's net pension liability as required by GASB Statement 68.

(3) In 2018, an adjustment has been made to the prior period as a result of implementing GASB Statement 75 (Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions).



**APPENDIX B**

**GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT  
AND ITS ECONOMY**

# ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

## General and Economic Information

Elkhart ISD is located primarily in Anderson County with a small portion of the District extending into Houston County. The District is an agricultural and petroleum producing area which includes the City of Elkhart. The District's current estimated population is 5,655.

Anderson County is an east Texas county located between the Trinity and Neches Rivers with an economy based on tourism, prison unit, manufacturing, hunting leases, fishing and distribution center. U.S. Highways 287, 79, and 84 provide the major transportation routes through the County. The County is partly in the Texas Claypan area and partly in the East Texas Timberlands of the Southern Coastal Plains. The Claypan area is used mainly for cultivated cropland and pasture, the Timberlands are used mostly for pasture and woodland. The county seat is Palestine. The County's current estimated population is 57,580.

Source: Texas Municipal Reports for Elkhart ISD and Anderson County.

## Enrollment Statistics

<u>Year Ending 8/31</u>	<u>Enrollment</u>
2007	1,264
2008	1,337
2009	1,350
2010	1,326
2011	1,284
2012	1,240
2013	1,202
2014	1,207
2015	1,217
2016	1,244
2017	1,267
2018	1,270
Current	1,267

## District Staff

Teachers	107
Auxiliary Personnel	40
Teachers' Aides & Secretaries	44
Other	9
Administrators	6
	206

## Facilities

<u>Campus</u>	<u>Grades</u>	<u>Present Enrollment</u>	<u>Capacity</u>	<u>Year Built</u>	<u>Year of Addition/ Renovation</u>
Elkhart Elementary School	PK-2	341	360	1974	1986, 1991, 2000, 2005, 2007
Elkhart Intermediate School	3-5	278	290	1996	1962, 1993, 1996, 2003
Elkhart Middle School	6-8	266	320	1956	1990, 1993
Elkhart High School	9-12	382	420	2010	2010

**Principal Employers within the District**

<u>Name of Company</u>	<u>Type of Business</u>	<u>Number of Employees</u>
Elkhart ISD	Public School	206
Eagle Railcar Service	Railroad Car Repair	179
Wilson Culverts	Culvert Manufacturer	20
Elkhart State Bank	Bank	10

**Unemployment Rates**

	<u>February 2017</u>	<u>February 2018</u>	<u>February 2019</u>
Anderson County	4.2%	3.3%	3.4%
State of Texas	4.8%	4.1%	3.9%

*Source: Texas Workforce Commission.*

**APPENDIX C**

**FORM OF LEGAL OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL**



Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP  
2200 Ross Avenue, Suite 3600  
Dallas, Texas 75201-7932  
United States

[Closing Date]

Tel +1 214 855 8000  
Fax +1 214 855 8200  
nortonrosefulbright.com

IN REGARD to the authorization and issuance of the "Elkhart Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019", dated May 1, 2019 in the aggregate principal amount of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Bonds"), we have examined into their issuance by the Elkhart Independent School District (the "District") solely to express legal opinions as to the validity of the Bonds, the defeasance and discharge of the District's outstanding obligations being refunded by the Bonds and the exclusion of the interest on the Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes, and for no other purpose. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and we neither expressly nor by implication render herein any opinion concerning, the financial condition or capabilities of the District, the disclosure of any financial or statistical information or data pertaining to the District and used in the sale of the Bonds, or the sufficiency of the security for or the value or marketability of the Bonds.

THE BONDS are issued in fully registered form only and in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (within a maturity). The Bonds mature on August 15 in each of the years specified in the pricing certificate (the "Pricing Certificate") executed pursuant to an order adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District authorizing the issuance of the Bonds (the "Order" and, jointly with the Pricing Certificate, the "Bond Order"), unless redeemed prior to maturity in accordance with the terms stated on the Bonds. The Bonds accrue interest from the date, at the rates, and in the manner and interest is payable on the dates, all as provided in the Bond Order.

IN RENDERING THE OPINIONS herein we have examined and rely upon (i) original or certified copies of the proceedings relating to the issuance of the Bonds, including the Bond Order, an Escrow Agreement (the "Escrow Agreement") between the District and BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the "Escrow Agent"), a sufficiency certificate of the District's financial advisor (the "Sufficiency Certificate"), and an examination of the initial Bond executed and delivered by the District (which we found to be in due form and properly executed); (ii) certifications of officers of the District relating to the expected use and investment of proceeds of the sale of the Bonds and certain other funds of the District and (iii) other documentation and such matters of law as we deem relevant. In the examination of the proceedings relating to the issuance of the Bonds, we have assumed the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to original copies of all documents submitted to us as certified copies, and the accuracy of the statements contained in such documents and certifications.

74279463.1/1001003021

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP is a limited liability partnership registered under the laws of Texas.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright Australia, Norton Rose Fulbright Canada LLP and Norton Rose Fulbright South Africa Inc are separate legal entities and all of them are members of Norton Rose Fulbright Verein, a Swiss verein. Norton Rose Fulbright Verein helps coordinate the activities of the members but does not itself provide legal services to clients. Details of each entity, with certain regulatory information, are available at [nortonrosefulbright.com](http://nortonrosefulbright.com).

Page 2 of Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP

Re: "Elkhart Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019", dated May 1, 2019

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, we are of the opinion that, under applicable laws of the United States of America and the State of Texas in force and effect on the date hereof:

1. The Bonds have been duly authorized by the District and, when issued in compliance with the provisions of the Bond Order, are valid, legally binding, and enforceable obligations of the District, payable from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property within the District, except to the extent that the enforceability thereof may be affected by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights or the exercise of judicial discretion in accordance with general principles of equity.

2. The Escrow Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered and is a binding and enforceable agreement in accordance with its terms and the outstanding obligations refunded, discharged, paid and retired with the proceeds of the Bonds have been defeased and are regarded as being outstanding only for the purpose of receiving payment from the funds held in a trust fund with the Escrow Agent, pursuant to the Escrow Agreement and in accordance with the provisions of Texas Government Code, Chapter 1207, as amended. In rendering this opinion, we have relied upon the Sufficiency Certificate as to the sufficiency of the cash deposited with the Escrow Agent pursuant to the Escrow Agreement for the purposes of paying the outstanding obligations refunded and to be retired with the proceeds of the Bonds and the interest thereon.

3. Pursuant to section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the "Code"), and existing regulations, published rulings, and court decisions thereunder, and assuming continuing compliance after the date hereof by the District with the provisions of the Bond Order relating to sections 141 through 150 of the Code, interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes (a) will be excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owners thereof, and (b) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof.

WE EXPRESS NO OTHER OPINION with respect to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences under present law or any proposed legislation resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, "S" corporations with subchapter "C" earnings and profits, owners of interests in a financial asset securitization investment trust, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

Page 3 of Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP

Re: "Elkhart Independent School District Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2019", dated May 1, 2019

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED on existing law, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service; rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinions and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above.

**APPENDIX D**

**AUDITED FINANCIAL REPORT  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018**



ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Exhibit</u>		<u>Page</u>
	<b>Table of Contents</b>	1
	<b>Certificate of Board</b>	3
	<b>Independent Auditor's Report</b>	4
	<b>Management's Discussion and Analysis</b>	7
	<b>Financial Statements:</b>	
	<b>Government - Wide Financial Statements:</b>	
A-1	Statement of Net Position	14
B-1	Statement of Activities	15
	<b>Governmental Fund Financial Statements:</b>	
C-1	Balance Sheet	16
C-2	Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds Balance Sheet to the Statement of Net Position	17
C-3	Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances	18
C-4	Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances to the Statement of Activities	19
	<b>Proprietary Fund Financial Statements:</b>	
D-1	Statement of Net Position	N/A
D-2	Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position	N/A
D-3	Statement of Cash Flows	N/A
	<b>Fiduciary Fund Financial Statements:</b>	
E-1	Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	20
E-2	Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position	N/A
	<b>Notes to the Financial Statements</b>	21
	<b>Required Supplementary Information</b>	
G-1	Budgetary Comparison Schedule - General Fund	57
G-2	Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability- Teacher Retirement System of Texas	58
G-3	Schedule of District Contributions for Pensions - Teacher Retirement System of Texas	59
G-4	Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability - Teacher Retirement System of Texas	60
G-5	Schedule of District Contributions for Other Post-Employment Benefits - Teacher Retirement System of Texas	61
	<b>Notes to Required Supplementary Information</b>	62

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS, CONTINUED

<u>Exhibit</u>		<u>Page</u>
<b>Combining Statements:</b>		
<b>Nonmajor Governmental Funds:</b>		
H-1	Combining Balance Sheet	63
H-2	Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances	64
<b>Required TEA Schedules:</b>		
J-1	Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable	65
J-2		N/A
J-3		N/A
J-4	Budgetary Comparison Schedule - Child Nutrition Fund	66
J-5	Budgetary Comparison Schedule - Debt Service Fund	67
<b>Compliance, Internal Control and Federal Awards:</b>		
	Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with Government Auditing Standards	68
	Report on Compliance For Each Major Federal Program; Report on Internal Control Over Compliance; and Report on the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards Required by the Uniform Guidance	71
	Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs	73
	Summary Schedule of Prior Audit Findings	75
	Corrective Action Plan	76
K-1	Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards	76
	Notes to the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards	77

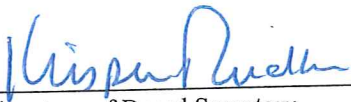
CERTIFICATE OF BOARD

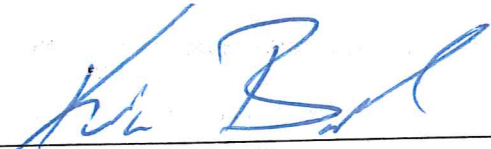
Elkhart Independent School District  
Name of School District

Anderson  
County

001-903  
Co. - Dist. No.

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above named school district were reviewed and  approved \_\_\_\_\_ disapproved for the year ended August 31, 2018 at a meeting of the board of school trustees of such school district on the 25<sup>th</sup> day of February, 2019.

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Board Secretary

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Board President

If the board of trustees disapproved of the auditor's report, the reason(s) for disapproving it is(are):  
(attach list as necessary)

**SMITH, LAMBRIGHT & ASSOCIATES, P.C.**  
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

Marlin R. Smith, CPA  
J. W. Lambright, CPA

Cheri E. Kirkland, CPA  
David N. Hopkins, CPA

P. O. Box 912  
505 E. Tyler  
Athens, Texas 75751  
(903) 675-5674  
FAX (903) 675-5676  
smithlambright.com

**Unmodified Opinions on Basic Financial Statements  
Accompanied by Required Supplementary Information and Other Information**

**Independent Auditor's Report**

Board of School Trustees  
Elkhart Independent School District  
301 East Parker  
Elkhart, Texas 75839

**Report on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Elkhart Independent School District (the "District"), as of and for the year ended August 31, 2018, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

***Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements***

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America. This includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

***Auditor's Responsibility***

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

## ***Opinions***

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of the District as of August 31, 2018, and the respective changes in financial position and, where applicable, cash flows thereof for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

## ***Other Matters***

### ***Required Supplementary Information***

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the *Management's Discussion and Analysis* be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

### ***Other Required Supplementary Information and Other Information***

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements. The budgetary comparison schedule - general fund, schedule of district's proportionate share of the net pension liability - TRS, schedule of district contributions - TRS, schedule of the District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability - TRS, schedule of District contributions for other post-employment benefits - TRS, combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, required TEA schedules and schedule of expenditures of federal awards, as required by *Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards*, are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The budgetary comparison schedule - general fund, schedule of district's proportionate share of the net pension liability - TRS, schedule of district contributions - TRS, schedule of the District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability - TRS, schedule of District contributions for other post-employment benefits - TRS, combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, required TEA schedules and schedule of expenditures of federal awards are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statement themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the budgetary comparison schedule - general fund, schedule of district's proportionate share of the net pension liability - TRS, schedule of district contributions - TRS, combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements, required TEA schedules and schedule of expenditures of federal awards are fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

**Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards***

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated February 25, 2019 on our consideration of the District's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

Respectfully submitted,

SMITH, LAMBRIGHT & ASSOCIATES, P. C.  
Certified Public Accountants  
Athens, Texas

February 25, 2019

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS



# ELKHART I. S. D.

LAMONT SMITH, Ed. D.,  
Superintendent  
KAY CHAPMAN,  
Director of Special Programs  
JASON IVES  
High School Principal  
RON MAYS  
Middle School Principal  
GREG HERRING  
Intermediate Principal  
TANA HERRING  
Elementary Principal



KEVIN BUSH,  
President  
HAROLD HOLLOWAY,  
Vice President  
KRISPEN RUCKER,  
Secretary  
PAUL BARNETT  
JOE ESTES  
CHARLES McSHAN  
CHAD STEELY

## MANAGEMENTS DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

In this section of the Annual Financial and Compliance Report, we, the managers of Elkhart Independent School District, discuss and analyze the District's financial performance for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018. Please read it in conjunction with the independent auditors' report and the District's Basic Financial Statements.

### **USING THIS ANNUAL REPORT:**

This annual report consists of a series of financial statements. The government-wide financial statements include the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities. These provide information about the activities of the District as a whole and present a longer-term view of the District's property and debt obligations and other financial matters. They reflect the flow of total economic resources in a manner similar to the financial reports of a business enterprise.

Fund financial statements report the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements by providing information about the District's most significant funds. For governmental activities, these statements tell how services were financed in the short term as well as what resources remain for future spending. They reflect the flow of current financial resources, and supply the basis for tax levies and the appropriations budget. The remaining statements, fiduciary statements, provide financial information about activities for which the District acts solely as a trustee or agent for the benefit of those outside of the district.

The notes to the financial statements provide narrative explanations or additional data needed for full disclosure in the government-wide statements or the fund financial statements.

The sections labeled TEA Required Schedules and Federal Awards Section contain data used by monitoring or regulatory agencies for assurance that the District is using funds supplied in compliance with the terms of the grants.

### **REPORTING THE DISTRICT AS A WHOLE:**

#### ***The Statement of Net Position and The Statement of Activities***

The analysis of the District's overall financial condition and operations is located in this section. Its primary purpose is to show whether the District is better off or worse off as a result of the year's activities. The Statement of Net Position includes all the District's assets and liabilities at the end of the year while The Statement of Activities includes all revenues and expenses generated by the District's operations during the year.

*"Academic Excellence Through Innovation Instruction"*

301 E. Parker, Elkhart, Texas 75839  
903-764-2952 / Fax 903-764-2466 / [www.elkhartisd.org](http://www.elkhartisd.org)

These apply the accrual basis of accounting, which is the basis used by private sector companies.

All of the current year's revenues and expenses are taken into account regardless of when cash is received or paid. The District's revenues are divided into those provided by outside parties who share the costs of some programs, such as tuition received from students from outside the district and grants provided by the U.S. Department of Education to assist children with disabilities from disadvantaged backgrounds (program revenues), and revenues provided by the taxpayers or by TEA in equalization funding processes (general revenues). All the District's assets are reported whether they serve the current year or future years. Liabilities are considered regardless of whether they must be paid in the current or future years.

These two statements report the District's net position and changes in them. The District's net position (the difference between assets and liabilities) provide one measure of the District's financial health, or financial position. Over time, increases or decreases in the District's net assets are one indicator of whether its financial health is improving or deteriorating. To fully assess the overall health of the District, however, you should consider nonfinancial factors as well, such as changes in the District's average daily attendance or its property tax base and the condition of the District's facilities.

In the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities, we report the District's Governmental Activity.

Governmental activities – Most of the District's basic services are reported here, including the instruction, counseling, extracurricular activities, food services, transportation, maintenance, community services, and general administration. Property taxes, tuition, fees, and state and federal grants finance most of these activities.

### ***Reporting the District's Most Significant Funds***

#### ***Fund Financial Statements***

The fund financial statements provide detailed information about the most significant funds – not the District as a whole. Laws and contracts require the District to establish some funds, such as grants received under the No Child Left Behind Act from the U.S. Department of Education. The District's administration establishes many other funds to help it control and manage money for particular purposes (like campus activities).

Governmental funds – Most of the District's basic services are reported in governmental funds. These use modified accrual accounting (a method that measures the receipt and disbursement of cash and all other financial assets that can be readily converted to cash) and report balances that are available for future spending. The governmental fund statements provide a detailed short-term view of the District's general operations and the basic services it provides. We describe the differences between governmental activities (reported in the Statement of Net Position and The Statement of Activities) and governmental funds in reconciliation schedules following each of the fund financial statements.

## ***The District as Trustee***

### ***Reporting the District's Fiduciary Responsibilities***

The District is the trustee, or fiduciary, for money raised by student activities and scholarship programs. All of the District's fiduciary activities are reported in separate Statements of Fiduciary Net Position and Changes in Fiduciary Net Position. We exclude these resources from the District's other financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its operations. The District is only responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in these funds are used for their intended purposes.

### **GOVERNMENT-WIDE FINANCIAL ANALYSIS:**

Our analysis focuses on the net position (Table 1) and changes in net position (Table II) of the District's governmental activities.

Net positions of the District's governmental activities were \$8,012,335. at August 31, 2018. Unrestricted net position – the part of net position that can be used to finance day-to-day operations without constraints established by debt covenants, enabling legislation or other legal requirements were \$(1,638,879.) at August 31, 2018

The cost of all governmental activities this year was \$10,297,595. However, as shown in the Statement of Activities in Exhibit B-1 the amount that our taxpayers ultimately financed for these activities through District taxes was only \$3,680,560. because some of the costs were paid by those who directly benefited from the programs \$311,493. or by other governments and organizations that subsidized certain programs with grants and contributions \$(428,940.) or by State equalization funding \$7,792,346

### **THE DISTRICT'S FUNDS:**

As the District completed the year, its governmental funds (as presented in Exhibit C-1) reported a combined fund balance of \$4,070,016.

Over the course of the year, the Board of Trustees revised the District's budget several times. These amendments were made primarily to move funds from programs that did not need all the resources originally appropriated to them to programs with resource needs. The amendments were also made to include monies donated by businesses and grant awards.

The District's General Fund balance of \$3,629,478. reported in Exhibit C-1 differs from the General Fund's budgetary fund balance of \$4,073,516. reported in the budgetary comparison schedule in Exhibit G-1.

### **CAPITAL ASSET AND DEBT ADMINISTRATION:**

#### ***Capital Assets***

At the conclusion of 2018, the District had \$35,431,173.00 invested in a broad range of capital assets, including facilities and equipment for instruction, transportation, athletics, administration, and maintenance.

**Debts**

The District's Bonded Debt during the year ended August 31, 2018, is summarized below:

	<u>Beginning Balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Reductions</u>	<u>Ending Balance</u>	<u>Due Within One Year</u>
Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds	\$14,115,000		355,000	\$13,760,000	380,000 Series 2009 and 2017

The District's Loan Debt during the year ended August 31, 2018, is summarized below:

	<u>Beginning Amount</u>	<u>Reductions</u>	<u>Ending Balance</u>	<u>Due Within One Year</u>
Maintenance Tax Note Series 2016	\$473,000	\$49,000	\$424,000	\$ 50,000

**ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES:**

The Elkhart Independent School District Superintendent and Board of Trustees considered many factors when formulating the 2017 – 2018 fiscal year budget and tax rate. The most pressing issues were: (1) A continued commitment to utilizing monies from the fund balance to satisfy bonded indebtedness payment obligations); (2) A reduction in student per-capita (Available School Funds) and Instructional Facilities Allotment (IFA) and Existing Debt Allotment (EDA) funding from the state from previous years; and (3) On-going facilities improvement needs.

Local taxable income has increased from \$3,418,012. in August of 2017 to a current amount of \$3,680,560.00. We had an increase in our minerals this year (oil & gas). A number of years ago, Elkhart Independent School District voters passed a Building Bond of \$16 Million, with an amortization period of thirty years for the construction of a new High School complex. After two previous failed bond elections, a third attempt was passed which included taking a substantial amount from the existing fund balance, and also committing monies annually from the fund balance over the course of the next thirty years in order to pass the bond. This decision was made to ensure that a I&S Tax Rate of \$0.19 per \$100.00 valuation would remain static over the life of the bond. This continues to put a strain on the annual budget and needs of the Maintenance and Operations financial needs of the District. A drop in the tax collection percentages is also cause for concern. For the 2017 – 2018 school year, \$458,168 was transferred from the District's fund balance to assist with the Debt Service obligation payment in August.

While EISD's state revenues have increased due to slight enrollment (Refined ADA) increases, the monies generated from the state's coffers in Available School Funding, Instructional Facilities Allotment, and Existing Debt Allotment have declined over each of the past three school years.

For the 2017 -2018 school year, EISD adopted a continued compressed Maintenance and Operations tax rate of \$1.17 and \$0.19 for Interest and Sinking. This maintains a Total Tax Rate of \$1.36 per \$100.00 valuation. These rates mandate strict budgetary control and oversight, while still enabling the District to keep the facilities in good operating form, and provide the very best educational opportunities.

EISD has been able to achieve a perfect score of 100% on their Financial Integrity Rating (FIRST) again this year. This has been accomplished by very careful oversight of and coming in under-budget overall on expenditures. The major financial challenge for the District moving forward will be in the area of maintaining a fund balance of over \$3 Million (three months of operating expenses).

#### **CONTACTING THE DISTRICT'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT:**

Financial reports are designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, investors, creditors, and all other stakeholders with a general overview of the District's finances, and to show the District's accountability for the monies it receives and expends.

Questions regarding financial reports should be directed to the District's administration at:

301 East Parker, Elkhart, Texas 75839.

Official District contacts that can be reached at 903-764-2952 are:

Dr. Lamont Smith, Superintendent of Schools  
Rhonda Brewer, Business Manager  
Candy Facklam, Accounts Receivable and Payable  
Beverly Holliday, Payroll Clerk.

**TABLE I  
ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NET POSITION**

	<b>GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES 2017</b>	<b>GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES 2018</b>
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Current and other assets	\$ 4,355,470	\$5,236,980.
Capital assets	\$24,449,365	\$23,689,772.
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>\$28,804,835</b>	<b>\$28,926,752.</b>
<b>DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>		
Deferred Charge for Refunding	\$ 787,595	\$787,595
Deferred Outflow Related to TRS	\$ 1,059,495	\$827,718
<b>Total Deferred Outflows of Resources</b>	<b>\$1,847,090</b>	<b>\$1,615,313</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>		
Long-term liabilities	\$15,702,520	\$14836,691
Current liabilities	\$354,542	\$968,092
Net Pension Liability (District's Share)	\$1,887,741	\$1,523,923
<b>Total liabilities</b>	<b>\$17,944,803</b>	<b>\$20,782,756</b>
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>		
Deferred Inflow Related to TRS	\$108,792	\$1,746,794
<b>Total Deferred Inflows of Resources</b>	<b>\$108,792</b>	<b>\$1,746,794</b>
<b>NET POSITION</b>		
Invested in capital assets Net of related debt	\$9,534,440	\$ 9,210,676
Restricted	\$119,153	\$440,538
Unrestricted	\$2,944,737	(\$1,638,879)
<b>Total Net Position</b>	<b>\$12,598,330.00</b>	<b>\$8,012,335</b>

**TABLE II**  
**ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**CHANGES IN NET POSITION**

	GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES 2017	GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES 2018
<b>Revenues:</b>		
Program revenues:		
Charges for services	\$ 314,647	\$311,493
Operating grants and contributions	\$ 1,521,208	(\$428,940)
<b>General Revenues:</b>		
Property taxes-General purposes & Debt service	\$ 3,418,012	\$3,680,560
State aid – formula grants	\$ 7,476,891	\$7,792,346
Grants and Contributions Not Restricted	\$ 99,090	
Investments earnings	\$ 11,014	\$15,085
Miscellaneous	\$ 110,093	\$280,492
<b>Total Revenue</b>	<b>\$ 12,950,955</b>	<b>\$11,651,036</b>
<b>Expenses:</b>		
Instruction, curriculum and media services	\$7,710,751	\$5,463,346
Instruction and school leadership	\$694,049	\$453,720
Student support services	\$753,529	\$533,392
Child nutrition	\$508,874	\$577,438
Extracurricular activities	\$670,854	\$566,970
General administration	\$539,739	\$346,979
Facilities maintenance & operations, Security, Data Processing & Community Services	\$1,406,783	\$1,286,093
Capital Outlay	\$0	
Debt Service-Bond Issuance Cost & Fees	\$713,315	\$ 594,299
Payments to fiscal agent	\$359,943	\$357,911
<b>Total Expenses</b>	<b>\$ 13,357,837</b>	<b>\$10,180,148</b>
Change in Net Position	\$ (406,882)	\$1,470,888
Transfers	-0-	0
Special items	-0-	0
Net Position at 9/1	\$13,005,212	\$12,598,330
Prior Period Adjustment	-0-	(6,056,833)
Net Position at 8/31	\$12,598,330	\$8,012,335

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS



ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
AUGUST 31, 2018

EXHIBIT A-1

Data Control Codes	Primary Government
	Governmental Activities
<b>ASSETS</b>	
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 920,128
1120 Current Investments	3,130,833
1220 Property Taxes - Delinquent	689,786
1230 Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(34,489)
1240 Due from Other Governments	530,722
Capital Assets:	
1510 Land	494,677
1520 Buildings, Net	22,215,059
1530 Furniture and Equipment, Net	980,036
1000 Total Assets	28,926,752
<b>DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>	
1701 Deferred Charge for Refunding	787,595
1703 Deferred Resource Outflow Related to TRS OPEB	55,758
1705 Deferred Resource Outflow Related to TRS Pension	771,960
1700 Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	1,615,313
<b>LIABILITIES</b>	
2140 Interest Payable	26,425
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	459,405
2200 Accrued Expenses	11,001
2300 Unearned Revenue	41,261
Noncurrent Liabilities:	
2501 Due Within One Year	430,000
2502 Due in More Than One Year	14,836,691
2540 Net Pension Liability (District's Share)	1,523,923
2545 Net OPEB Liability (District's Share)	3,454,050
2000 Total Liabilities	20,782,756
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>	
2603 Deferred Resource Inflow Related to TRS OPEB	1,444,836
2605 Deferred Resource Inflow Related to TRS Pension	302,138
2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	1,746,974
<b>NET POSITION</b>	
3200 Net Investment in Capital Assets	9,210,676
3820 Restricted for Federal and State Programs	16,782
3850 Restricted for Debt Service	353,394
3870 Restricted for Campus Activities	70,362
3900 Unrestricted	(1,638,879)
3000 Total Net Position	\$ 8,012,335

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

EXHIBIT B-1

Data Control Codes	1	Program Revenues		6
Expenses	3	4	6	Net (Expense) Revenue and Changes in Net Position
	Charges for Services	Operating Grants and Contributions	Primary Gov. Governmental Activities	
<b>Primary Government:</b>				
<b>GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES:</b>				
11 Instruction	\$ 5,320,813	\$ 17,370	\$ (693,795)	\$ (5,997,238)
12 Instructional Resources and Media Services	107,973	-	(32,023)	(139,996)
13 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	34,560	-	32,777	(1,783)
21 Instructional Leadership	76,579	-	-	(76,579)
23 School Leadership	377,141	-	(110,847)	(487,988)
31 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	123,275	-	(34,600)	(157,875)
33 Health Services	28,416	-	(8,239)	(36,655)
34 Student (Pupil) Transportation	381,701	-	(54,713)	(436,414)
35 Food Services	577,438	130,389	410,295	(36,754)
36 Extracurricular Activities	566,970	157,884	(53,127)	(462,213)
41 General Administration	346,979	-	(69,368)	(416,347)
51 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	1,160,292	5,850	(94,145)	(1,248,587)
52 Security and Monitoring Services	11,319	-	6,468	(4,851)
53 Data Processing Services	113,982	-	(24,682)	(138,664)
61 Community Services	500	-	-	(500)
72 Debt Service - Interest on Long-Term Debt	593,799	-	297,059	(296,740)
73 Debt Service - Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	500	-	-	(500)
93 Payments Related to Shared Services Arrangements	262,108	-	-	(262,108)
95 Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed. Prg.	27,001	-	-	(27,001)
99 Other Intergovernmental Charges	68,802	-	-	(68,802)
<b>[TP] TOTAL PRIMARY GOVERNMENT:</b>	<b>\$ 10,180,148</b>	<b>\$ 311,493</b>	<b>\$ (428,940)</b>	<b>(10,297,595)</b>

Data Control Codes	General Revenues:	
	Taxes:	
MT	Property Taxes, Levied for General Purposes	3,164,497
DT	Property Taxes, Levied for Debt Service	516,063
SF	State Aid - Formula Grants	7,792,346
IE	Investment Earnings	15,085
MI	Miscellaneous Local and Intermediate Revenue	280,492
TR	Total General Revenues	<u>11,768,483</u>
CN	Change in Net Position	1,470,888
NB	Net Position - Beginning	12,598,330
PA	Prior Period Adjustment	(6,056,883)
NE	Net Position--Ending	<u>\$ 8,012,335</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
BALANCE SHEET  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 684,017	\$ 35,393	\$ 200,718	\$ 920,128
1120 Investments - Current	3,130,833	-	-	3,130,833
1220 Property Taxes - Delinquent	608,664	81,122	-	689,786
1230 Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(30,433)	(4,056)	-	(34,489)
1240 Due from Other Governments	493,095	1,885	35,742	530,722
1260 Due from Other Funds	196,968	324,483	43,041	564,492
1000 Total Assets	<u>\$ 5,083,144</u>	<u>\$ 438,827</u>	<u>\$ 279,501</u>	<u>\$ 5,801,472</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	\$ 433,934	\$ -	\$ 25,471	\$ 459,405
2170 Due to Other Funds	404,753	8,367	151,372	564,492
2200 Accrued Expenditures	9,019	-	1,982	11,001
2300 Unearned Revenue	27,729	-	13,532	41,261
2000 Total Liabilities	<u>875,435</u>	<u>8,367</u>	<u>192,357</u>	<u>1,076,159</u>
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>				
2601 Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes	578,231	77,066	-	655,297
2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>578,231</u>	<u>77,066</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>655,297</u>
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
Restricted Fund Balance:				
3450 Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction	-	-	16,782	16,782
3480 Retirement of Long-Term Debt	-	353,394	-	353,394
Committed Fund Balance:				
3510 Construction	1,000,000	-	-	1,000,000
Assigned Fund Balance:				
3590 Other Assigned Fund Balance	-	-	70,362	70,362
3600 Unassigned Fund Balance	2,629,478	-	-	2,629,478
3000 Total Fund Balances	<u>3,629,478</u>	<u>353,394</u>	<u>87,144</u>	<u>4,070,016</u>
4000 Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflows & Fund Balances	<u>\$ 5,083,144</u>	<u>\$ 438,827</u>	<u>\$ 279,501</u>	<u>\$ 5,801,472</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEET TO THE  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
AUGUST 31, 2018

EXHIBIT C-2

<b>Total Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>	\$	4,070,016
<b>1</b> Capital assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources and therefore are not reported in governmental funds. At the beginning of the year, the cost of these assets was \$35,349,434 and the accumulated depreciation was (\$10,900,069). Other assets related to long term debt issuance are not reported in the governmental funds. Included are deferred charges on refunding of \$787,595 at the beginning of the year. In addition, long-term liabilities, including bonds payable, are not due and payable in the current period, and, therefore are not reported as liabilities in the funds. The long term debt was (\$15,702,520). The net effect of including the beginning balances for capital assets (net of depreciation) and long-term debt in the governmental activities is to increase (decrease) net position. Note: Beginning Balances related to TRS are NOT included in this amount.		9,534,440
<b>2</b> Current year capital outlays and long-term debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets and reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of including the 2018 capital outlays and debt principal payments is to increase (decrease) net position.		485,739
<b>3</b> Included in the items related to debt is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability required by GASB 68. The net position related to TRS included a deferred resource outflow in the amount of \$771,960, a deferred resource inflow in the amount of \$302,138, and a net pension liability in the amount of \$1,523,923. This resulted in an increase (decrease) in net position.		(1,054,101)
<b>4</b> Included in the items related to debt is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability required by GASB 75. The net position related to TRS included a deferred resource outflow in the amount of \$55,758, a deferred resource inflow in the amount of \$1,444,836, and a net OPEB liability in the amount of \$3,454,050. This resulted in an increase (decrease) in net position.		(4,843,128)
<b>5</b> The 2018 depreciation expense increases accumulated depreciation. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.		(841,332)
<b>6</b> Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue from property taxes as revenue, reclassifying the proceeds of bond sales as an increase in bonds payable, and recognizing the liabilities associated with maturing long-term debt and interest. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to increase (decrease) net position.		660,701
<b>19 Net Position of Governmental Activities</b>	<u>\$</u>	<u>8,012,335</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	50 Debt Service Fund	Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 3,464,927	\$ 524,413	\$ 244,548	\$ 4,233,888
5800 State Program Revenues	8,315,130	297,059	97,368	8,709,557
5900 Federal Program Revenues	11,774	-	807,581	819,355
5020 Total Revenues	<u>11,791,831</u>	<u>821,472</u>	<u>1,149,497</u>	<u>13,762,800</u>
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	6,655,139	-	449,956	7,105,095
0012 Instructional Resources and Media Services	168,462	-	-	168,462
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	1,783	-	32,777	34,560
0021 Instructional Leadership	75,642	-	-	75,642
0023 School Leadership	597,153	-	-	597,153
0031 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	197,451	-	-	197,451
0033 Health Services	43,165	-	-	43,165
0034 Student (Pupil) Transportation	428,003	-	-	428,003
0035 Food Services	-	-	547,418	547,418
0036 Extracurricular Activities	539,630	-	97,802	637,432
0041 General Administration	486,586	-	-	486,586
0051 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	1,239,698	-	-	1,239,698
0052 Security and Monitoring Services	1,453	-	6,468	7,921
0053 Data Processing Services	150,857	-	-	150,857
0061 Community Services	500	-	-	500
Debt Service:				
0071 Principal on Long-Term Debt	49,000	355,000	-	404,000
0072 Interest on Long-Term Debt	8,609	617,831	-	626,440
0073 Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	500	-	500
Capital Outlay:				
0081 Facilities Acquisition and Construction	10,600	-	-	10,600
Intergovernmental:				
0093 Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	262,108	-	-	262,108
0095 Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed. Prg.	27,001	-	-	27,001
0099 Other Intergovernmental Charges	68,802	-	-	68,802
6030 Total Expenditures	<u>11,011,642</u>	<u>973,331</u>	<u>1,134,421</u>	<u>13,119,394</u>
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	<u>780,189</u>	<u>(151,859)</u>	<u>15,076</u>	<u>643,406</u>
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>				
7915 Transfers In	9,600	458,168	-	467,768
8911 Transfers Out (Use)	(467,768)	-	-	(467,768)
7080 Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	<u>(458,168)</u>	<u>458,168</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	322,021	306,309	15,076	643,406
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	<u>3,307,457</u>	<u>47,085</u>	<u>72,068</u>	<u>3,426,610</u>
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	<u>\$ 3,629,478</u>	<u>\$ 353,394</u>	<u>\$ 87,144</u>	<u>\$ 4,070,016</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,  
 AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

EXHIBIT C-4

<b>Total Net Change in Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>	\$	643,406
Current year capital outlays and long-term debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets and reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of removing the 2018 capital outlays and debt principal payments is to increase (decrease) net position.		485,739
Depreciation is not recognized as an expense in governmental funds since it does not require the use of current financial resources. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.		(841,332)
Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue from property taxes as revenue, adjusting current year revenue to show the revenue earned from the current year's tax levy, reclassifying the proceeds of bond sales, and recognizing the liabilities associated with maturing long-term debt and interest. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to increase (decrease) net position.		86,383
GASB 68 required that certain plan expenditures be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource outflows. These contributions made after the measurement date of the plan caused the change in ending net position to increase by \$152,624. Contributions made before the measurement date and during the previous fiscal year were also expended and recorded as a reduction in the net pension liability. This caused a decrease in net position totaling \$155,089. Finally, the proportionate share of the pension expense on the plan as a whole had to be recorded. The net pension expense decreased the change in net position by \$114,598. The net result is an increase (decrease) in the change in net position.		(117,063)
GASB 75 required that certain plan expenditures be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource outflows. These contributions made after the measurement date of the plan caused the change in ending net position to increase by \$55,218. Contributions made before the measurement date and during the previous fiscal year were also expended and recorded as a reduction in net OPEB liability. This caused a decrease in net position totaling \$41,068. Finally, the proportionate share of the TRS OPEB expense on the plan as a whole had to be recorded. The net OPEB expense decreased the change in net position by (\$1,199,605). The net result is an increase (decrease) in the change in net position.		1,213,755
<b>Change in Net Position of Governmental Activities</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>1,470,888</b>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION  
FIDUCIARY FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2018

---

	Agency Fund
<hr/>	
ASSETS	
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 135,656
Total Assets	<u>\$ 135,656</u>
LIABILITIES	
Due to Student Groups	\$ 135,656
Total Liabilities	<u>\$ 135,656</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**I. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

Elkhart Independent School District (“The District”) is a public educational agency operating under the applicable laws and regulations of the State of Texas. It is governed by a seven member Board of Trustees (the “Board”) elected by registered voters of the District. The District prepares its basic financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles promulgated by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board and other authoritative sources identified in *GASB Statement No. 56*; and it complies with the requirements of the appropriate version of Texas Education Agency’s *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide* (the “Resource Guide”) and the requirements of contracts and grants of agencies from which it receives funds.

*Pensions.* The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes, for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS’s fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

*Other Post-Employment Benefits.* The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) TRS Care Plan has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net OPEB liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits, OPEB expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS Care’s fiduciary net position. Benefit payments are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. There are no investments as this is a pay-as-you-go plan and all cash is held in a cash account.

**A. REPORTING ENTITY**

The Board of Trustees (the “Board”) has governance responsibilities over all activities related to public elementary and secondary education within the jurisdiction of the District. The Board is elected by the public, has the authority to make decisions, appoint administrators and managers, significantly influence operations, and has primary accountability for fiscal matters. As such, the District is not included in any other governmental “reporting entity” as defined by *GASB Statement No. 14, The Financial Reporting Entity*. There are no component units included within the reporting entity. The District receives funding from local, state, and federal government sources and must comply with the requirements of these funding source entities.

**B. GOVERNMENT-WIDE AND FUND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities are government-wide financial statements. They report information on all of the District’s nonfiduciary activities with most of the interfund activities removed. *Governmental activities* include programs supported primarily by taxes, State foundation funds, grants and other intergovernmental revenues. *Business-type activities* include operations that rely to a significant extent on fees and charges for support.

The Statement of Activities demonstrates how other people or entities that participate in programs the District operates have shared in the payment of the direct costs. Direct costs are identifiable with a specific function. Program revenues of the District include charges for services and operating grants and contributions. The “charges for services” column includes payments made by parties that purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods or services provided by a given function or segment of the District. Examples includes tuition paid by students not residing in the district, school lunch charges, etc. The “grants and contributions” column includes amounts paid by



ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

organizations outside the District to help meet the operational or capital requirements of a given function. Examples include grants under the Elementary and Secondary Education Act. If a revenue is not a program revenue, it is a general revenue used to support all of the District's functions. Taxes are always general revenues.

During the course of operations the District has activity between funds for various purposes. Any residual balances outstanding at year end are reported as due from /to other funds and advances to/from other funds. While these balances are reported in fund financial statements, certain eliminations are made in the preparation of the government-wide financial statements. Balances between the funds included in governmental activities (i.e., the governmental and internal service funds) are eliminated so that only the net amount is included as internal balances in the governmental activities column. Similarly, balances between the funds included in business-type activities (i.e., the enterprise funds) are eliminated so that only the net amount is included as internal balances in the business-type activities column.

The fund financial statements provide reports on the financial condition and results of operations for three fund categories - governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary. Since the resources in the fiduciary funds cannot be used for District operations, they are not included in the government-wide statements. The District considers some governmental and enterprise funds major and reports their financial condition and results of operations in a separate column.

Proprietary funds distinguish operating revenues and expenses from nonoperating items. Operating revenues and expenses result from providing services and producing and delivering goods in connection with a proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations. All other revenues and expenses are nonoperating.

**C. MEASUREMENT FOCUS, BASIS OF ACCOUNTING, AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION**

The government-wide financial statements use the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting, as do the proprietary fund and fiduciary fund financial statements. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of the related cash flows. Property taxes are recognized as revenues in the year for which they are levied. Grants and similar items are recognized as revenue as soon as all eligibility requirements imposed by the provider have been met.

Governmental fund financial statements use the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. With this measurement focus, only current assets, current liabilities and fund balances are included on the balance sheet. Operating statements of these funds present net increases and decreases in current assets (i.e., revenues and other financing sources and expenditures and other financing uses).

The modified accrual basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they become both measurable and available, and it recognizes expenditures in the accounting period in which the fund liability is incurred, if measurable, except for unmatured interest and principal on long-term debt, which is recognized when due. The expenditures related to certain compensated absences and claims and judgments are recognized when the obligations are expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. The District considers all revenues available if they are collectible within 60 days after year end.

Revenues from local sources consist primarily of property taxes. Property tax revenues and revenues received from the State are recognized under the susceptible-to-accrual concept. Miscellaneous revenues are recorded as revenue when received in cash because they are generally not measurable until actually received. Investment earnings are recorded as earned, since they are both measurable and available.

Grant funds are considered to be earned to the extent of expenditures made under the provisions of the grant.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Accordingly, when such funds are received, they are recorded as deferred revenues until related and authorized expenditures have been made. If balances have not been expended by the end of the project period, grantors sometimes require the District to refund all or part of the unused amount.

The proprietary fund types are accounted for on a flow of economic resources measurement focus and utilize the accrual basis of accounting. This basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they are earned and become measurable and expenses in the accounting period in which they are incurred and become measurable. The Agency funds apply the accrual basis of accounting but do not have a measurement focus. All assets and all liabilities associated with operation of these funds are included on the Statement of Net Position. The total net position is segregated into invested in capital assets net of related debt, restricted net assets, and unrestricted net position.

The fiduciary fund types are accounted for on a flow of economic resources measurement focus and utilize the accrual basis of accounting. This basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they are earned and become measurable and expenses in the accounting period in which they are incurred and become measurable.

The Agency funds apply the accrual basis of accounting but do not have a measurement focus as they report only assets and liabilities.

#### **D. FUND ACCOUNTING**

The District's accounts are organized on the basis of funds, each of which is considered to be a separate accounting entity. The operations of each fund are accounted for by providing a separate set of self-balancing accounts which are comprised of each fund's assets, liabilities, equity, revenues, and expenditures or expenses.

The District reports the following fund types:

Governmental Funds:

- 1. General Fund** - The general fund is the District's primary operating fund and is always reported as a major fund. It accounts for all financial resources except those required to be accounted for in another fund.
- 2. Special Revenue Funds** - The District accounts for resources restricted to, or designated for specific purposes by the District or a grantor in a special revenue fund. Most Federal and some State financial assistance is accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund, and sometimes unused balances must be returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods.
- 3. Debt Service Fund** - The District accounts for resources accumulated and payments made for principal and interest on long-term general obligation debt of governmental funds in a debt service fund.
- 4. Capital Projects Fund** - The proceeds from long-term debt financing and revenues and expenditures related to authorized construction and other capital asset acquisitions are accounted for in a capital projects fund.

Fiduciary Funds:

- 5. Agency Funds** - The District accounts for resources held for others in a custodial capacity in agency funds. The District's Agency Fund is the student activity fund.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**E. CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS**

Cash and cash equivalents include cash and highly liquid investments such as certificates of deposits, money market funds, local government investment pools, Treasury bills, and commercial paper that have a maturity from time of purchase of three months or less.

**F. INVENTORIES**

The District records purchases of supplies as expenditures. Inventory on the balance sheet, when present, is recorded at cost and represents supplies and materials purchased for the subsequent school year. Food service commodities are recorded at fair market value as supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services.

**G. PREPAYMENTS**

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepayments in both government-wide and fund financial statements.

**H. CAPITAL ASSETS**

Capital assets, which include land, buildings, furniture and equipment are reported in the governmental column in the government-wide financial statements. Capital assets are defined by the District as assets with an initial, individual cost of more than \$5,000 and an estimated useful life in excess of two years. Such assets are recorded at historical cost or estimated historical cost if purchased or constructed. Donated capital assets are recorded at estimated fair market value at the date of donation.

The costs of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend assets lives are not capitalized. Major outlays for capital assets and improvements are capitalized as projects are constructed.

Buildings, furniture and equipment of the District are depreciated using the straight line method over the following estimated useful lives:

<u>Assets</u>	<u>Years</u>
Buildings	15-50
Vehicles	5-10
Furniture and Equipment	5-7

Land and construction in progress are not depreciated.

**I. DEFERRED OUTFLOWS / DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES**

GASB No. 63 and GASB No. 65 provide guidance on financial reporting related to deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources. The objective of these statements is to improve financial reporting by standardizing the presentation of deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources and their effects on a government's net position.

In addition to assets, the Balance Sheet and Statement of Net Position may report a separate section for deferred outflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, Deferred Outflows of Resources, represents a consumption of net position that applies to a future period(s) and so will not be recognized as an outflow of resources (expense/expenditure) until then.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

In addition to liabilities, the Balance Sheet and Statement of Net Position may report a separate section for deferred inflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, Deferred Inflows of Resources, represents an acquisition of net position that applies to a future period(s) and so will not be recognized as an inflow or resource (revenue) until that time.

**J. LONG TERM DEBT**

In the government-wide financial statements, and proprietary fund types in the fund financial statements, long-term debt and other long-term obligations are reported as liabilities in the applicable governmental activities, business-type activities, or proprietary fund type statement of net position. Bond premiums and discounts are deferred and amortized over the life of the bonds using the effective interest method. Bonds payable are reported net of the applicable bond premium or discount. Bond issuance costs are reported as current year debt service expenditures.

In the fund financial statements, governmental fund types recognize bond premiums and discounts, as well as bond issuance costs, during the current period. The face amount of debt issued is reported as other financing sources. Premiums received on debt issuances are reported as other financing sources while discounts on debt issuances are reported as other financing uses. Issuance costs, whether or not withheld from the actual debt proceeds received, are reported as debt service expenditures.

**K. FUND BALANCE**

The Governmental Accounting Standards Board has issued Statement No. 54, *Fund Balance Reporting and Governmental Fund Type Definitions* (GASB 54). This Statement defines the different types of fund balances that a governmental entity must use for financial reporting purposes.

GASB 54 requires the fund balance amounts to be properly reported within one of the fund balance categories list below:

1. Nonspendable fund balance - includes amounts that cannot be spent because they are either not in spendable form, or legally or contractually required to be maintained intact. The "not in spendable form" criterion includes items that are not expected to be converted to cash, for example, inventories and prepaid amounts. It also includes the long-term amount of loans and notes receivable.
2. Restricted Fund Balance - includes amounts that are restricted to specific purposes when constraints placed on the use of the resources are either externally imposed by creditors (such as through debt covenants), grantors, contributors, or laws or regulations of other governments; or imposed by law through constitutional provisions of enabling legislation.
3. Committed Fund Balance - includes amounts that can only be used for specific purposes pursuant to constraints imposed by formal action of the District's Board of Trustees. Those committed amounts cannot be used for any other purposes unless the Board removes or changes the specified use by taking the same type of action it employed to previously commit those amounts.
4. Assigned Fund Balance - includes amounts that are constrained by the District's intent to be used for specific purposes, but are neither restricted nor committed. Intent should be expressed by the Board or by other officials to which the Board has delegated the authority to assign amounts to be used for specific purposes. When it is appropriate for fund balance to be assigned, the Board delegates the responsibility to assign funds to the Superintendent or his/her designee.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

5. Unassigned Fund Balance - is the residual classification for the general fund. This classification represents fund balance that has not been assigned to other funds and that has not been restricted, committed, or assigned to specific purposes within the general fund.

The District will utilize funds in the following spending order: Restricted, Committed, Assigned and Unassigned.

**L. USE OF ESTIMATES**

The presentation of financial statements, in conformity with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles, requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements, and the reported amounts of revenues and expenditures during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

**M. DATA CONTROL CODES**

The Data Control Codes refer to the account code structure prescribed by TEA in the *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide*. Texas Education Agency requires school districts to display these codes in the financial statements filed with the Agency in order to insure accuracy in building a Statewide data base for policy development and funding plans.

**N. TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM**

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes, for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deduction from TRS's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments of the system are reported at fair value.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**II. RECONCILIATION OF GOVERNMENT-WIDE AND FUND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**A. EXPLANATION OF CERTAIN DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENTAL FUND BALANCE SHEET AND THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE STATEMENT OF NET POSITION**

Exhibit C-2 provides the reconciliation between the fund balance for total governmental funds on the governmental fund balance sheet and the net position for governmental activities as reported in the government-wide statement of net position. One element of that reconciliation explains that capital assets are not financial resources and are therefore not reported in governmental funds. In addition, long-term liabilities, including bonds payable, are not due and payable in the current period and are not reported as liabilities in the funds. The details of capital assets and long-term debt at the beginning of the year were as follows:

<u>Capital Assets at the Beginning of the Year</u>	<u>Historical Cost</u>	<u>Accumulated Depreciation</u>	<u>Net Value at the Beginning of the Year</u>	<u>Change in Net Position</u>
Land	\$ 494 677	\$	\$ 494 677	
Buildings & Improvements	32 289 785	9 328 174	22 961 611	
Furniture & Equipment	<u>2 564 972</u>	<u>1 571 895</u>	<u>993 077</u>	
Totals	<u>\$ 35 349 434</u>	<u>\$ 10 900 069</u>		
Change in Net Position				\$ 24 449 365
<u>Deferred Outflows at the Beginning of the Year</u>				
Deferred Charge for Refunding			<u>787 595</u>	
Change in Net Position				<u>787 595</u>
<u>Long-term Liabilities at the Beginning of the Year</u>			<u>Payable at the Beginning of the Year</u>	
Bonds Payable			\$ 14 115 000	
Premium on Issuance of Bonds			1 279 495	
(Discount) on Issuance of Bonds			(164 975)	
Loans Payable			<u>473 000</u>	
Change in Net Position				<u>(15 702 520)</u>
Net Adjustment to Net Position				<u>\$ 9 534 440</u>

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**B. EXPLANATION OF CERTAIN DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENTAL FUND STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES AND THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES**

Exhibit C-4 provides a reconciliation between the net changes in fund balance as shown on the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances and the changes in Net position of governmental activities as reported on the government-wide statement of activities. One element of that reconciliation explains that current year capital outlays and debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but should be shown as increases in capital assets and decreases in long-term debt in the government-wide statements. This adjustment affects both the net asset balance and the change in net position. The details of this adjustment are as follows:

	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Adjustments to Changes in Net Assets</u>	<u>Adjustments to Net Position</u>
Current Year Capital Outlay:			
Land	\$		
Buildings & Improvements	10 600		
Furniture & Equipment	<u>71 139</u>		
Total Capital Outlay	<u>81 739</u>	<u>81 739</u>	<u>81 739</u>
Debt Payments:			
Bond Principal	355 000		
Loan Principal	<u>49 000</u>		
Total Principal Payments	<u>\$ 404 000</u>	<u>404 000</u>	<u>404 000</u>
Total Adjustment to Net Position		<u>\$ 485 739</u>	<u>\$ 485 739</u>

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**C. EXPLANATION OF OTHER DIFFERENCES**

Another element of the reconciliation on Exhibits C-2 and C-4 is described as various other reclassifications and eliminations necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. This adjustment is the result of several items. The details for this element are as follows:

	Amount	Adjustments to Changes in Net Assets	Adjustments to Net Position
Adjustments to Revenue and Deferred Revenue:			
Taxes Collected from Prior Year Levies	\$ 98 626	\$ (98 626 )	\$
Uncollected taxes(assumed collectible) from Current Year Levy	152 368	152 368	152 368
Uncollected Taxes (assumed collectible) from Prior Year Levy	502 929		502 929
Accrued Interest on Debt:			
Prior Year	27 237	27 237	
Current Year	26 425	(26 425)	(26 425)
Bond Discount Amortization			
Current Year	10 473	(10 473 )	(10 473 )
Bond Premium Amortization			
Current Year	42 302	42 302	42 302
Total		\$ 86 383	\$ 660 701



ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**III. STEWARDSHIP, COMPLIANCE, AND ACCOUNTABILITY**

**A. BUDGETARY DATA**

The Board of Trustees adopts an "appropriated budget" for the General Fund, Debt Service Fund and the Food Service Fund (which is included in the Special Revenue Fund). The District is required to present the adopted and final amended budgeted revenues and expenditures for each of these funds. The District compares the final amended budget to actual revenues and expenditures. The General Fund budget report appears in Exhibit G-1 and the other two reports are in Exhibits J-4 and J-5.

The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data reflected in the basic financial statements:

1. Prior to August 20 the District prepares a budget for the next succeeding fiscal year beginning September 1. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.
2. A meeting of the Board is then called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget. At least ten days' public notice of the meeting must be given.
3. Prior to September 1, the budget is legally enacted through passage of a resolution by the Board.

Once a budget is approved, it can only be amended at the function and fund level by approval of a majority of the members of the Board. Amendments are presented to the Board at its regular meetings. Each amendment must have Board approval. As required by law, such amendments are made before the fact, are reflected in the official minutes of the Board, and are not made after fiscal year end. The budget was amended as necessary during the year.

Each budget is controlled at the organizational level by the administration, appropriate department head or campus principal within Board allocations at the revenue and expenditure function /object level. Budgeted amounts are as amended by the Board. All budget appropriations lapse at year end.

A reconciliation of fund balances for both appropriated budget and nonappropriated budget special revenue funds is as follows:

	August 31, 2018 Fund Balance
Appropriated Budget Funds - Food Service Special Revenue Fund	\$ 8 677
Nonappropriated Budget Funds	78 467
All Special Revenue Funds	\$ 87 144

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**B. EXCESS OF EXPENDITURES OVER APPROPRIATIONS**

The District made expenditures in excess of the budgeted amount in functional areas of the General Fund and the Child Nutrition Fund. The District should review planned expenditures to make certain they are within the budgeted amounts.

**C. ENCUMBRANCE ACCOUNTING**

Encumbrance accounting, under which purchase orders, contracts, and other commitments are recorded in order to reserve that portion of the applicable appropriation, is used in all governmental funds. Encumbrance accounting is utilized to ensure effective budgetary control and accountability. Encumbrances outstanding at year-end are commitments that do not constitute expenditures or liabilities. Since appropriations lapse at the end of each fiscal year, outstanding encumbrances are appropriately provided for in the subsequent fiscal year's budget to provide for the liquidation of the prior commitments. There were no outstanding encumbrances at the end of the fiscal year that were subsequently provided for in the 2018-2019 budget.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**IV. DETAILED NOTES ON ALL FUNDS AND ACCOUNT GROUPS**

**A. DEPOSITS AND INVESTMENTS**

The Public funds Investment Act (Government Code Chapter 2256) contains specific provisions in the areas of investment practices, management reports and establishment of appropriate policies. Among other things, it requires the District to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar - weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, and (9) bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit.

State statutes and Board policy authorize the District to invest in 1) Obligations of, or guaranteed by, governmental entities as permitted by Government Code 2256.009.; 2) Certificates of deposit and share certificates as permitted by Government Code 2256.010.; 3) Fully collateralized repurchase agreements permitted by Government Code 2256.011.; 4) A securities lending program as permitted by Government Code 2256.0115.; 5) Banker's acceptances as permitted by Government Code 2256.012.; 6) Commercial paper as permitted by Government Code 2256.013.; 7) No load money market mutual funds and no load mutual funds as permitted by Government Code 2256.014.; 8) A guaranteed investment contract as an investment vehicle for bond proceeds, provided it meets the criteria and eligibility requirements established by Government Code 2256.015.; and 9) Public funds investment pools as permitted by Government Code 2256.016.

In compliance with the Public Funds Investment Act, the District has adopted an investment policy. The District is in substantial compliance with the requirements of the Act and with local policies. The risks that the District may be subject are:

- a. Custodial Credit Risk - Deposits: This is the risk that in the event of a bank failure, the District's deposits, including checking, money market accounts and certificates of deposit, may not be returned to it.

The funds of the District must be deposited and invested under the terms of a contract, contents of which are set out in the Depository Contract Law. The depository bank places approved pledged securities for safekeeping and trust with the District's agent bank in an amount sufficient to protect District funds on a day-to-day basis during the period of the contract. The pledge of approved securities is waived only to the extent of the depository bank's dollar amount of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insurance. During 2017-2018 the District's combined deposits were not fully insured by federal depository insurance or collateralized with securities pledged to the District and held by the District's agent.

The largest combined balances of cash, savings and time deposit accounts amounted to \$5,992,855 and occurred on January 29, 2018. The amount of bond or market value of securities pledged as of the date of the highest combined balance on deposit was \$4,926,513. The total amount of FDIC coverage at the time of the highest combined balance was \$500,000.

- b. Custodial Credit Risk - Investments: This is the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty, the District will not be able to recover the value of its investments or collateral securities that are in the possession of an outside party. Any investment that is both uninsured and unregistered is exposed to custodial credit risk if the investment is held by the counterparty, or if the investment is held by the counterparty's trust department or agent, but not in the name of the investor government. Investments are subject to custodial credit risk only if they are evidenced by securities that exist in physical or book entry form. Positions in external investment pools are not subject to custodial credit risk.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

- c. Interest Rate Risk: Interest rate risk occurs when potential purchasers of debt securities do not agree to pay face value for those securities if interest rates rise. Investments with interest rates that are fixed for longer periods are likely to be subject to more variability in their fair values as a result of future changes in interest rates.
- d. Concentration of Credit Risk: Concentration risk is defined as positions of five percent or more in the securities of a single issuer. This is the issuer of the underlying investment, and not a pool. This does not apply to U.S. Government securities.

CASH DEPOSITS

At August 31, 2018, the amount of the District's cash balance in checking accounts was \$1,055,784.

INVESTMENTS - CASH EQUIVALENTS

The District's investments - cash equivalents at August 31, 2018, are shown below:

<u>Investment Type</u>	<u>Cost</u>	<u>Fair Value</u>	<u>Weighted Average Maturity (Years)</u>
Money Market Account	\$ 3 130 833	\$ 3 130 833	.0822
Total Investments	<u>\$ 3 130 833</u>	<u>\$ 3 130 833</u>	

INVESTMENTS - OTHER

The District's investments - other at August 31, 2016, are shown below:

	<u>Cost</u>	<u>Fair Value</u>	<u>Weighted Average Maturity (Years)</u>
N/A	\$ _____	\$ _____	
Total Investments	<u>\$ _____</u>	<u>\$ _____</u>	

Local government investment pools operate in a manner consistent with the SEC's Rule 2a7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940. Local government investment pools use amortized cost rather than market value to report net assets to compute share prices. Accordingly the market value of the position in these pools is the same as the value of the shares in each pool, which approximates the carrying amount. The investment pools are organized in conformity with the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code, and the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256 of the Texas Government Code.

For the purpose of the statement of cash flows for proprietary fund types, if any, the District considers highly liquid investments to be cash equivalents if they have a maturity of three months or less when purchased.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**B. PROPERTY TAXES**

Property taxes are levied by October 1 on the assessed value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property located in the District in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas Property Tax Code. Taxes are due upon receipt of the tax bill and are delinquent if not paid by February 1 of the year following the year in which imposed. On January 31 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed. Delinquent taxes not paid by June 30 are subject to penalty and interest charges plus delinquent collection fees for attorney costs. Property taxes are considered available when collected within the current period or expected to be collected soon enough thereafter to be used to pay liabilities of the current period.

Delinquent taxes are prorated between maintenance and debt service based on rates adopted for the year of the levy. Allowances for uncollectible taxes within the General and Debt Service Funds are based on historical experience in collecting taxes. Uncollectible taxes are periodically reviewed and written off by the District as provided by specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature.

The assessed value of the property tax roll on January 1, 2017 upon which the levy for the 2017-2018 fiscal year was based, was \$272,824,192. The tax rates assessed for the year ended August 31, 2018 to finance General Fund operations and the payment of principal and interest on general obligation long-term debt were \$1.17 and \$.19 per \$100 valuation, respectively, for a total of \$1.36 per \$100 valuation. Current tax collections for the year ended August 31, 2018 were 95.7% of the year end adjusted tax levy. As of August 31, 2018, property taxes receivable totaled \$608,664 and \$81,122 for the General and Debt Service Funds respectively.

**C. RECEIVABLES FROM OTHER GOVERNMENTS**

The District participates in variety of federal and state programs from which it receives grants to partially or fully finance certain activities. In addition, the District receives entitlements from the State through the School Foundation and Per Capita Programs. Amounts due from federal and state governments as of August 31, 2018 are summarized below. All federal grants shown below are passed through the TEA and are reported on the combined financial statements as Receivables from Other Governments.

	General Fund	Debt Service Fund	Other Funds	Total
State Foundation	\$ 493 095	\$	\$	\$ 493 095
State Grants				
Federal Grants			35 742	35 742
Existing Debt Allotment		1 345		1 345
Instructional Facilities Allotment		540		540
	<u>493 095</u>	<u>1 885</u>	<u>35 742</u>	<u>530 722</u>
Total	<u>\$ 493 095</u>	<u>\$ 1 885</u>	<u>\$ 35 742</u>	<u>\$ 530 722</u>

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**D. INTERFUND BALANCES AND TRANSFERS**

Interfund balances at August 31, 2018 consisted of the following individual fund amounts:

<u>Fund</u>	<u>Due From</u>	<u>Due To</u>
General Fund:		
General Fund	\$ 37 229	\$ 37 229
Special Revenue Fund	151 372	43 041
Debt Service Fund	<u>8 367</u>	<u>324 483</u>
Total	<u>196 968</u>	<u>404 753</u>
Special Revenue Fund:		
General Fund	<u>43 041</u>	<u>151 372</u>
Debt Service Fund:		
General Fund	<u>324 483</u>	<u>8 367</u>
Totals	<u>\$ 564 492</u>	<u>\$ 564 492</u>

Interfund transfers for the year ended August 31, 2018 consisted of the following individual fund amounts:

<u>Fund</u>	<u>Transfer In</u>	<u>Transfer Out</u>
General Fund:		
General Fund	\$ 9 600	\$ 9 600
Debt Service Fund	<u>          </u>	<u>458 168</u>
Total	<u>9 600</u>	<u>467 768</u>
Debt Service Fund:		
General Fund	<u>458 168</u>	<u>          </u>
Totals	<u>\$ 467 768</u>	<u>\$ 467 768</u>

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**E. RECEIVABLES AND PAYABLES**

Receivables at August 31, 2018, were as follows:

	General Fund	Debt Service Fund	Other Funds	Total
Property Taxes (Net)	\$ 578 231	\$ 77 066	\$	\$ 655 297
Other Governments	493 095	1 885	35 742	530 722
Other Funds	196 968	324 483	43 041	564 492
Total	\$ 1 268 294	\$ 403 434	\$ 78 783	\$ 1 750 511

Payables at August 31, 2018, were as follows:

	General Fund	Debt Service Fund	Other Funds	Total
Accrued Wages	\$ 433 934	\$	\$ 25 471	\$ 459 405
Other Funds	404 753	8 367	151 372	564 492
Total	\$ 838 687	\$ 8 367	\$ 176 843	\$ 1 023 897

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**F. CAPITAL ASSET ACTIVITY**

Capital asset activity for the District's governmental activities for the year ended August 31, 2018, was as follows:

	<u>Beginning Balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Retirements/ Adjustments</u>	<u>Ending Balance</u>
<b>Nondepreciable Capital Assets</b>				
Land	\$ 494 677	\$	\$	\$ 494 677
Construction in Progress				
Subtotal Nondepreciable Assets	<u>494 677</u>			<u>494 677</u>
<b>Depreciable Capital Assets</b>				
Building & Improvements	32 289 785	10 600		32 300 385
Furniture & Equipment	<u>2 564 972</u>	<u>71 139</u>		<u>2 636 111</u>
Subtotal Depreciable Assets	<u>34 854 757</u>	<u>81 739</u>		<u>34 936 496</u>
Total at Historical Cost	<u>35 349 434</u>	<u>81 739</u>		<u>35 431 173</u>
<b>Less Accumulated Depreciation for:</b>				
Buildings & Improvements	9 328 174	757 152		10 085 326
Furniture & Equipment	<u>1 571 895</u>	<u>84 180</u>		<u>1 656 075</u>
Total Accumulated Depreciation	<u>10 900 069</u>	<u>841 332</u>		<u>11 741 401</u>
<b>Governmental Activities Capital Assets, Net</b>	<u>\$ 24 449 365</u>	<u>\$ (759 593)</u>	<u>\$</u>	<u>\$ 23 689 772</u>

Depreciation expense was charged to governmental functions as follows:

11	Instruction	\$ 609 673
21	Instructional Leadership	937
34	Student (Pupil) Transportation	50 966
35	Food Services	30 020
36	Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	37 200
41	General Administration	3 019
51	Plant Maintenance and Operations	100 663
52	Security and Monitoring Services	3 398
53	Data Processing / Technology	<u>5 456</u>
	Total Depreciation Expense	<u>\$ 841 332</u>



ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**G. BONDS PAYABLE**

Bonded indebtedness of the District is reflected in the Long-Term Account Group, and current requirements for principal and interest expenditures are accounted for in the Debt Service Fund.

A summary of changes in bonds payable for the year ended August 31, 2018 is as follows:

<u>Description</u>	<u>Interest Rate Payable</u>	<u>Amounts Original Issue</u>	<u>Amounts Outstanding 9/1/17</u>	<u>Issued</u>	<u>Retired</u>	<u>Amounts Outstanding 8/31/18</u>	<u>Interest Current Year</u>
Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds Series 2009	4.625% to 5.000%	\$16 000 000	\$ 5 285 000	\$	\$ 355 000	\$ 4 930 000	\$ 258 481
Unlimited Tax Refunding Bonds Series 2017	3.0% to 5.0%	8 865 000	8 830 000		0	8 830 000	359 350
Totals			<u>\$14 115 000</u>	<u>\$</u>	<u>0</u>	<u>\$ 355 000</u>	<u>\$ 13 760 000</u>
				<u>\$</u>	<u>617 831</u>		

Debt service requirements are as follows:

<u>Year Ended August 31</u>	<u>General Obligations</u>		
	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Total Requirements</u>
2019	\$ 380 000	\$ 600 081	\$ 980 081
2020	415 000	581 081	996 081
2021	435 000	560 331	995 331
2022	460 000	538 581	998 581
2023	480 000	515 581	995 581
2024-2028	2 785 000	2 194 606	4 979 606
2029-2033	3 460 000	1 517 369	4 977 369
2034-2038	4 360 000	761 450	5 121 450
2039	985 000	41 313	1 026 313
	<u>\$ 13 760 000</u>	<u>\$ 7 310 393</u>	<u>\$ 21 070 393</u>

There are a number limitations and restrictions contained in the general obligation bond indenture. Management has indicated that the District is in compliance with all significant limitations and restrictions at August 31, 2018.

The District defeased certain general obligation bonds by placing the proceeds of new bonds in an irrevocable trust to provide for all future debt service payments on the old bonds. Accordingly, the trust account asset and liabilities for the defeased bonds are not included in the District's financial statements. As of August 31, 2018, \$9,020,000 of bonds considered defeased are still outstanding.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**H. LOANS PAYABLE**

The District accounts for short-term debts for maintenance purposes through the General Fund. Short-term debts include notes made in accordance with the provisions of the Texas Education Code Section 45.108. The proceeds from long-term loans are shown in the financial statements as Other Resources and principal and interest payments are shown as debt service in the General Fund.

A Maintenance Tax Note, Series 2016, loan of \$520,000 was issued on July 20, 2016 for the purpose of paying maintenance expenses of the District as authorized by Texas Education Code Section 45.108, as amended. The loan is to be repaid in semi-annual payments beginning February 15, 2017. The interest rate is 1.82%.

A summary of changes in loans payable for the year ended August 31, 2018 is as follows:

Description	Interest Rate Payable	Amounts Original Issue	Amounts Outstanding 9/1/17	Issued	Retired	Amounts Outstanding 8/31/18	Interest Current Year
Maintenance Tax Note Series 2016	1.82%	\$ 520 000	\$ 473 000	\$	\$ 49 000	\$ 424 000	\$ 8 609
Totals			<u>\$ 473 000</u>	<u>\$ 0</u>	<u>\$ 49 000</u>	<u>\$ 424 000</u>	<u>\$ 8 609</u>

Debt service requirements are as follows:

Year Ended August 31,	General Obligations		
	Principal	Interest	Total Requirements
2019	\$ 50 000	\$ 7 717	\$ 57 717
2020	51 000	6 807	57 807
2021	52 000	5 878	57 878
2022	53 000	4 932	57 932
2023	53 000	3 968	56 968
2024 - 2026	<u>165 000</u>	<u>6 042</u>	<u>171 042</u>
Totals	<u>\$ 424 000</u>	<u>\$ 35 344</u>	<u>\$ 459 344</u>

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**I. CHANGES IN LONG-TERM LIABILITIES**

Long-term liabilities activity for the year ended August 31, 2018, was as follows:

	<u>Beginning Balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Reductions</u>	<u>Ending Balance</u>	<u>Due Within One Year</u>
Governmental Activities:					
Bonds Payable:					
General Obligation Bonds	\$ 14 115 000	\$ _____	\$ 355 000	\$ 13 760 000	\$ 380 000
Premium (Discount) on Issuance of Bonds:					
Premium	1 279 495		42 302	1 237 193	
Discount	<u>(164 975 )</u>		<u>(10 473)</u>	<u>(154 502)</u>	
Loans Payable:					
Maintenance Tax Notes	<u>473 000</u>		<u>49 000</u>	<u>424 000</u>	<u>50 000</u>
Total Governmental Activities Long-term Liabilities					
	<u>\$ 15 702 520</u>	<u>\$ 0</u>	<u>\$ 435 829</u>	<u>\$ 15 266 691</u>	<u>\$ 430 000</u>

**J. UNEARNED AND UNAVAILABLE REVENUE**

	<u>General Fund</u>	<u>Debt Service Fund</u>	<u>Other Funds</u>	<u>Total</u>
Unearned revenue at year-end consisted of the following:				
State Foundation	\$ 27 729	\$ _____	\$ _____	\$ 27 729
Other Grants			13 532	13 532
Total	<u>\$ 27 729</u>	<u>\$ 0</u>	<u>\$ 13 532</u>	<u>\$ 41 261</u>

Unavailable revenue at the fiscal year end consisted of the following:

Net Property Taxes	<u>\$ 578 231</u>	<u>\$ 77 066</u>	<u>\$ 0</u>	<u>\$ 655 297</u>
--------------------	-------------------	------------------	-------------	-------------------

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**K. FUND BALANCE**

Fund Balance is classified as nonspendable, restricted, committed, assigned and/or unassigned. The individual fund balances of the District are:

<u>Fund Balance</u>	<u>General Fund</u>	<u>Debt Service Fund</u>	<u>Other Funds</u>	<u>Total</u>
Nonspendable:				
Inventory	\$	\$	\$	\$
Prepaid Items				
Restricted:				
Federal Grants			8 677	8 677
State Grants			8 105	8 105
Debt Service		353 394		353 394
Capital Projects				
Other				
Committed:				
Construction	1 000 000			1 000 000
Assigned:				
Campus Activity			70 362	70 362
Unassigned	<u>2 629 478</u>			<u>2 629 478</u>
Total Fund Balances	<u>\$ 3 629 478</u>	<u>\$ 353 394</u>	<u>\$ 87 144</u>	<u>\$ 4 070 016</u>

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**L. LOCAL AND INTERMEDIATE SOURCES OF REVENUES**

During the current year, local and intermediate sources of revenues consisted of the following:

	<u>General Fund</u>	<u>Debt Service Fund</u>	<u>Other Funds</u>	<u>Total</u>
Property Taxes	\$ 3 120 412	\$ 506 406	\$	\$ 3 626 818
Penalties, Interest, & Other Tax Related Income	120 175	17 539		137 714
Food Sales			130 388	130 388
Investment Income	14 471	468	146	15 085
Co-curricular Student Activities	44 430		113 454	157 884
Other	<u>165 439</u>	<u>          </u>	<u>560</u>	<u>165 999</u>
Totals	<u>\$ 3 464 927</u>	<u>\$ 524 413</u>	<u>\$ 244 548</u>	<u>\$ 4 233 888</u>

**M. JOINT VENTURE SHARED SERVICE ARRANGEMENT**

The District participates in a shared services arrangement for special education services with other school districts. Although a portion of the shared services arrangement is attributable to the District's participation, the District does not account for revenues or expenditures in this program and does not disclose them in these financial statements. The District neither has a joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, nor does the district have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant financial resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future additional benefit or burden to the District. The fiscal agent manager is responsible for all financial activities of the shared services arrangement. The District made payments to the fiscal agent of \$262,108.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**N. DEFINED BENEFIT PENSION PLAN**

**Plan Description.** The District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). It is a defined benefit pension plan established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67 and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

**Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position.** Detailed information about the Teacher Retirement System's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.texas.gov/TRS%20Documents/cafr2016.pdf>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

**Benefits Provided.** TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan description above.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**Contributions.** Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83<sup>rd</sup> Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 thru 2017. It also added a 1.5% contribution for employers not paying Old Age Survivor and Disability Insurance (OASDI) on certain employees effective for fiscal year 2015 as discussed in Note 1 of the TRS 2014 CAFR. The 83<sup>rd</sup> Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 and 2015. The 84<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

<b>Contribution Rates</b>		
	<b>2016</b>	<b>2018</b>
Member	7.7%	7.7%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	6.8%	6.8%
Employers	6.8%	6.8%
District's 2018 Current Fiscal Year Contributions		\$ 152 624
District's 2018 Current Fiscal Year Member Contributions		\$ 549 135
District's 2017 Measurement Year NECE On-Behalf Contributions		\$ 431 750

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers including public schools are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding source or a privately sponsored source, from non-educational and general, or local funds.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to.

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

**Actuarial Assumptions.** The total pension liability in the August 31, 2018 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2017
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age, Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Market Value
Single Discount Rate	8.00%
Long-term expected Investment Rate of Return	8.00%
Inflation	2.5%
Salary Increases Including Inflation	3.5% to 9.5%
Ad Hoc Post Employment Benefit Changes	None

The actuarial methods and assumptions are primarily based on a study of actual experience for the four year period ending August 31, 2014 and adopted on September 24, 2015.



ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**Discount Rate.** The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 8.0%. There was no change in the discount rate since the previous year. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability. The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 8%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the Systems target asset allocation as of August 31, 2017 are summarized below:

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Long-Term Expected Geometric Real Rate of Return	Expected Contribution to Long-Term Portfolio Returns *
<b>Global Equity</b>			
U.S.	18%	4.6%	1.0%
Non-U.S. Developed	13%	5.1%	0.8%
Emerging Markets	9%	5.9%	0.7%
Directional Hedge Funds	4%	3.2%	0.1%
Private Equity	13%	7.0%	1.1%
<b>Stable Value</b>			
U.S. Treasuries	11%	0.7%	0.1%
Absolute Return	0%	1.8%	0.0%
Stable Value Hedge Funds	4%	3.0%	0.1%
Cash	1%	-0.2%	0.0%
<b>Real Return</b>			
Global Inflation Linked Bonds	3%	0.9%	0.0%
Real Assets	16%	5.1%	1.1%
Energy and Natural Resources	3%	6.6%	0.2%
Commodities	0%	1.2%	0.0%
<b>Risk Parity</b>			
Risk Parity	5%	6.7%	0.3%
Inflations Expectations			2.2%
Alpha			1.0%
<b>Total</b>	100%		8.7%

*\*The Expected Contribution to Returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between Arithmetic and Geometric mean returns.*

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis.** The following schedule shows the impact of the Net Pension Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (8%) in measuring the Net Pension Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (7.0%)	Discount Rate (8.0%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (9.0%)
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability:	\$ <u>2 569 033</u>	\$ <u>1 523 923</u>	\$ <u>653 699</u>

**Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions.** At August 31, 2018, the District reported a liability of \$1,523,923 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District's Proportionate share of the collective net pension liability	\$ 1 523 923
State's proportionate share that is associated with the District	4 221 026
Total	<u>\$ 5 744 949</u>

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the employer's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 thru August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017 the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability was .0047660407%, which was an increase (decrease) of (.0002295008%) from its proportion measured as of August 31, 2016.

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation -** There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2018, the District recognized pension expense of \$321,963 and revenue of \$321,963 for support provided by the State.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

At August 31, 2018, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ 22 296	\$ 82 183
Changes in actuarial assumptions	69 417	39 740
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings		111 060
Changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	527 623	69 155
Total as of August 31, 2017 measurement date	619 336	302 138
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	152 624	
Total as of fiscal year end	\$ 771 960	\$ 302 138

The net amounts of the employer's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

Year ended August 31:	Pension Expense Amount
2018	\$ 67 867
2019	165 243
2020	60 492
2021	27 128
2022	6 797
Thereafter	(10 429)

**Long-Term Liability Disclosure**

	Beginning Balance	Additions	Retirements	Ending Balance
Net Pension Liability	\$ 1 887 741	\$ (207 615)	\$ 156 203	\$ 1 523 923

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**O. DEFINED OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFIT PLANS**

**Plan Description**

The District participates in the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care). It is a multiple-employer, cost-sharing defined Other Post-Employment Benefit (OPEB) plan that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered through a trust by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) Board of Trustees. It is established and administered in accordance with the Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575.

**OPEB Plan Fiduciary Net Position**

Detail information about the TRS-Care's fiduciary net position is available in the separately-issued TRS Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX 78701-2698; or by calling (512)542-6592.

**Benefits Provided**

TRS-Care provides a basic health insurance coverage (TRS-Care 1), at no cost to all retirees from public school, charter schools, regional education service centers and other educational districts who are members of the TRS pension plan. Optional dependent coverage is available for an additional fee.

Eligible retirees and their dependent not enrolled in Medicare may pay premiums to participate in one of two optional insurance plans with more comprehensive benefits (TRS-Care 2 and TRS-Care 3). Eligible retirees and dependents enrolled in Medicare may elect to participate in one of the two Medicare health plans for an additional fee. To qualify for TRS-Care coverage, a retiree must have at least 10 years of service credit in the TRS pension system. The Board of Trustees is granted the authority to establish basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants as well as to amend benefit terms as needed under Chapter 1575.052. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs.

The premium rates for the optional health insurance are based on years of service of the member. The schedule below shows the monthly rates for the average retiree with Medicare Parts A & B coverage, with 20 to 29 years of service for the basic plan and the two optional plans.

**TRS-Care Plan Premium Rates**  
 Effective Sept. 1, 2016 - Dec. 31, 2017

	<b>TRS-Care 1</b>	<b>TRS-Care 2</b>	<b>TRS-Care 3</b>
	Basic Plan	Optional Plan	Optional Plan
Retiree	\$ 0	\$ 70	\$ 100
Retiree and Spouse	20	175	255
Retiree* and Children	41	132	182
Retiree and Family	61	237	337
Surviving Children only	28	62	82
* or surviving spouse			

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**Contributions**

Contribution rates for the TRS-Care plan are established in state statute by the Texas Legislature, and there is no continuing obligation to provide benefits beyond each fiscal year. The TRS-Care plan is currently funded on a pay-as-you-go basis and is subject to change based on available funding. Funding for TRS-Care is provided by retiree premium contributions and contributions from the state, active employees, and school districts based upon public school district payroll. The TRS Board of trustees does not have the authority to set or amend contribution rates.

Texas Insurance Code, section 1575.202 establishes the state’s contribution rate which is 1.0% of the employee’s salary. Section 1575.203 establishes the active employee’s rate which is .65% of pay. Section 1575.204 establishes an employer contribution rate of not less than 0.25 percent or not more than 0.75 percent of the salary of each active employee of the public. The actual employer contribution rate is prescribed by the Legislature in the General Appropriations Act. The following table shows contributions to the TRS-Care plan by type of contributor.

CONTRIBUTION RATES		
	2017	2018
Active Employee	0.65%	0.65%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	1.00%	1.25%
Employers	0.55%	0.75%
Federal/private Funding remitted by Employers	1.00%	1.25%
District’s 2018 Employer Contributions		\$ 55 218
District’s 2018 Member Contributions		\$ 46 355
District’s 2018 NECE On-behalf Contributions		\$ 69 780

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there is an additional surcharge all TRS employers are subject to (*regardless of whether or not they participate in the TRS Care OPEB program*). When employers hire a TRS retiree, they are required to pay to TRS Care, a monthly surcharge of \$535 per retiree.

TRS-Care received supplemental appropriations from the State of Texas as the Non-Employer Contributing Entity in the amount of \$15.6 million in fiscal year 2016 and \$182.6 million in fiscal year 2018.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**Actuarial Assumptions**

The total OPEB liability in the August 31, 2017 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions: *Actuarial Assumptions can be found in the 2017 TRS CAFR, Note 10, page 82.*

The following assumptions and other inputs used for members of TRS-Care are identical to the assumptions used in the August 31, 2017 TRS pension actuarial valuation:

Rates of Mortality	General Inflation
Rates of Retirement	Wage Inflation
Rates of Termination	Expected Payroll Growth
Rates of Disability Incidence	

**Additional Actuarial Methods and Assumptions:**

Valuation Date	August 31, 2017
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Inflation	2.5%
Discount Rate	3.42%
Aging Factors	Based on plan specific experience
Expenses	Third-party administrative expenses related to the delivery of health care benefits are included in the age-adjusted claims costs.
Payroll Growth Rate	2.5%
Projected Salary Increases	3.5% - 9.5%
Healthcare Trend Rates	4.5% to 12.00%
Election Rates	Normal Retirement: 70% participation prior to age 65 and 75% participation after age 65
Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes	None

**Other Information**

There was a significant plan change adopted in fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. Effective January 1, 2018, only one health plan option will be offered and all retirees will be required to contribute monthly premiums for coverage. Assumption changes made for the August 31, 2017 valuation include a change to the assumption regarding the phase-out of the Medicare Part D subsidies and a change to the discount rate from 2.98% as of August 31, 2016 to 3.42% as of August 31, 2017.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**Discount Rate**

A single discount rate of 3.42% was used to measure the total OPEB liability. There was a change of .44 percent in the discount rate since the previous year. *The Discount Rate can be found in the 2017 TRS CAFR on page 83.* Because the plan is essentially a “pay-as-you-go” plan, the single discount rate is equal to the prevailing municipal bond rate. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from active members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the OPEB plan’s fiduciary net position was projected *to not be able to* make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the municipal bond rate was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total OPEB liability. **The source of the municipal bond rate was Fixed-income municipal bonds with 20 years to maturity that include only federally tax-exempt municipal bonds as reported in Fidelity Index’s “20 -year Municipal GO AA Index” as of August 31, 2017.**

**Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis**

The following schedule shows the impact of the Net OPEB Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (3.42%) in measuring the Net OPEB Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (2.42%)	Current Single Discount Rate (3.42%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (4.42%)
District’s proportionate share of the Net OPEB liability:	\$ <u>4 076 637</u>	\$ <u>3 454 050</u>	\$ <u>2 953 631</u>

**Healthcare Cost Trend Rates Sensitivity Analysis**

The following presents the Net OPEB Liability of the plan using the assumed healthcare cost trend rate, as well as what the net OPEB liability would be if it were calculated using a trend rate that is one-percentage point lower or one-percentage point higher than the assumed healthcare cost trend rate.

	1% Decrease	Current Healthcare Cost Trend Rate	1% Increase in
Proportionate share of net OPEB liability:	\$ <u>2 875 842</u>	\$ <u>3 454 050</u>	\$ <u>4 212 733</u>

**OPEB Liabilities, OPEB Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to OPEB’s**

At August 31, 2018, the District reported a liability of \$3,454,050 for its proportionate share of the TRS’s Net OPEB Liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State OPEB support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability the related State support and total portion of the net OPEB liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District’s Proportionate share of the collective Net OPEB Liability	\$	3 454 050
State’s proportionate share that is associated with the District	\$	5 836 601
Total	\$	<u>9 290 651</u>

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

The Net OPEB Liability was measured as of August 31, 2017 and the Total OPEB Liability used to calculate the Net OPEB Liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the Net OPEB Liability was based on the employer's contributions to the OPEB plan relative to the contribution of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2016 thru August 31, 2017.

At August 31, 2017 the employer's proportion of the collective Net OPEB Liability was .0079428566%.

Since this is the first year of implementation, the District does not have the proportion measured as of August 31, 2016. The Notes to the Financial Statements for August 31, 2016 for TRS stated that the change in proportion was immaterial and, therefore, disregarded this year.

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation-** the following were changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the Total OPEB Liability since the prior measurement period:

There was a significant plan change adopted in fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. Effective January 1, 2018, only one health plan option will be offered and all retirees will be required to contribute monthly premiums for coverage. Assumption changes made for the August 31, 2017 valuation include a change to the assumption regarding the phase-out of the Medicare Part D subsidies and a change to the discount rate from 2.98% as of August 31, 2016 to 3.42% as of August 31, 2017.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the Total OPEB Liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2018, the District recognized OPEB expense of \$(1,953,082) and revenue of \$(1,953,082) for support provided by the State. (Refer to the 2017 Schedule of On-Behalf Contributions for this information posted on the TRS website under GASB Statements 74 & 75.)

At August 31, 2018, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits from the following sources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual actuarial experience	\$	\$ 72 106
Changes in actuarial assumptions		1 372 730
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings	525	
Changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	15	
Total as of August 31, 2017 measurement date	540	1 444 836
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date (To be calculated by employer)	55 218	
Total as of fiscal year end	\$ 55 758	\$ 1 444 836



ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

The net amounts of the employer's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to OPEB will be recognized in OPEB expense as follows:

Year ended August 31:	OPEB Expense Amount
2019	\$ (190 576)
2020	(190 576)
2021	(190 576)
2022	(190 576)
2023	(190 707)
Thereafter	(491 285)

**Long-Term Liability Disclosure**

	Beginning Balance	Additions	Retirements	Ending Balance
Net OPEB Liability	\$ 6 097 951	\$ (2 602 606)	\$ 41 295	\$ 3 454 050

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**P. HEALTH CARE**

During the year ended August 31, 2018 employees of the Elkhart Independent School District were covered by the state sponsored health insurance plan. The district paid premiums of \$225 per month per employee to the plan and employees, at their option, authorized payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents.

All premiums were paid to TRS-ActiveCare, the statewide health coverage program for public education employees administered by Aetna. The Plan was authorized by Article 3.51-2, Texas Insurance Code and was documented by contractual agreement.

The contract between the District and TRS ActiveCare is renewable September 1 of each year and terms of coverage and premium costs are included in the contractual provisions.

Latest financial statements for Aetna are available for the most recent year and have been filed with the Texas State Board of Insurance, Austin, Texas, and are public records.

**Q. SCHOOL DISTRICT RETIREE HEALTH PLAN**

Plan Description

The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit postemployment health care plan administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. TRS-Care Retired Plan provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. The statutory authority for the program is Texas Insurance Code Chapter 1575. Section 1575.052 grants the TRS Board of Trustees the authority to establish and amend basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants. The TRS issues a publicly available financial report that includes financial statements and supplementary information for TRS-Care. That report may be obtained by visiting the TRS Web site at [www.trs.state.tx.us](http://www.trs.state.tx.us), by writing to the Communications Department of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, Texas 78701, or by calling 1-800-223-8778.

Medicare Part D:

Federal Government Retiree Drug Subsidy - Medicare Part D allows for the Texas Public School Retired Employee Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care) to receive retiree drug subsidy payments from the federal government to offset certain prescription drug expenditures for eligible TRS-Care participants. On-behalf payments must be recognized as equal revenues and expenditures/expenses by the District. The allocation of these on-behalf payments is based on the ratio of a reporting entity's covered payroll to the entire payroll reported by all reporting entities. The amount allocated on-behalf for the year ended August 31, 2018 is estimated by TRS at \$33,599.

**R. COMPENSATED ABSENCES**

Vacations are to be taken within the same year they are earned, and any unused days at the end of the year are forfeited. Therefore, no liability has been accrued in the accompanying general purpose financial statements. Employees of the District are entitled to sick leave based on category/class of employment. Sick leave is allowed to be accumulated but does not vest. Therefore, a liability for unused sick leave has not been recorded in the accompanying general purpose financial statements.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**S. SELF-INSURED WORKERS' COMPENSATION**

During the year ended August 31, 2018 the Elkhart Independent School District was a participant in the Texas Public Schools Workers' Compensation Project (School Comp) self insurance fund as authorized by Section 504.011 (3) of the Texas Workers' Compensation Act and Texas Government Code Ch. 791, the Interlocal Cooperation Act.

The primary responsibility for funding the project claims shall rest with the members who will fund claim payments within an individual self-insured retention and within a shared self-insured retention. Financial responsibility for the project claims shall be allocated for the project year. Each member will fund the cost of each of its claim occurrences up to a limit equivalent to thirty percent of its standard funding for the project year in which the claim occurred. Members will share responsibility for funding the cost of every claim occurrence exceeding thirty percent of standard funding of the member where the claim occurred. Such funding shall be on a pro rata basis relative to each member's standard funding for the project year in which the claim occurred. A member's claim funding responsibilities attributable to claims arising in any one project year shall cease when its out-of-pocket expenditures equal to its total standard funding. Excess workers compensation stop loss coverage was provided by Safety National Casualty Company.

The District paid a fixed cost for premium and management fee of \$19,753 for the fiscal year. The self insured retention that the District can pay for each occurrence/claim for the year was \$17,424. During the year the District paid claims of \$6,898 and has accrued \$0 for unpaid claims as of August 31, 2018.

**T. OTHER COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

The District participates in numerous state and Federal grant programs which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, if any, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectibility of any related receivable at August 31, 2018 may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are no significant contingent liabilities relating to compliance with the rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying combined financial statements for such contingencies.

**U. RISK MANAGEMENT**

The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts theft of, damage to and destruction of assets; errors and omissions; injuries to employees; and natural disaster. During fiscal year 2018 the district purchased commercial insurance to cover general liabilities. There were no significant reductions in coverage in the past fiscal year, and there were no settlements exceeding insurance coverage for each of the past three fiscal years.

**V. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

The District has evaluated subsequent events through February 25, 2019; the date which the financial statements were available for distribution. There were none noted.

**W. PRIOR PERIOD ADJUSTMENT**

During fiscal year 2018, the District adopted GASB Statement No. 75 for Accounting and Financial Reporting for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions. With GASB 75, the District must assume their proportionate share of the Net OPEB liability of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. Adoption of GASB 75 required a prior period adjustment to report the effect of GASB 75 retroactively. The prior period adjustment totaled \$(6,056,883) which resulted in a restated beginning net position balance of \$6,541,447.

REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
 BUDGET AND ACTUAL - GENERAL FUND  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)	
	Original	Final			
<b>REVENUES:</b>					
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 3,109,036	\$ 3,109,141	\$ 3,464,927	\$ 355,786
5800	State Program Revenues	7,732,993	7,732,993	8,315,130	582,137
5900	Federal Program Revenues	34,132	34,132	11,774	(22,358)
5020	Total Revenues	10,876,161	10,876,266	11,791,831	915,565
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>					
Current:					
0011	Instruction	5,822,208	5,822,208	6,655,139	(832,931)
0012	Instructional Resources and Media Services	173,259	173,259	168,462	4,797
0013	Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	10	10	1,783	(1,773)
0021	Instructional Leadership	74,305	74,305	75,642	(1,337)
0023	School Leadership	599,426	599,426	597,153	2,273
0031	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	197,181	197,181	197,451	(270)
0033	Health Services	42,888	42,888	43,165	(277)
0034	Student (Pupil) Transportation	429,388	429,388	428,003	1,385
0036	Extracurricular Activities	531,445	531,445	539,630	(8,185)
0041	General Administration	506,952	506,952	486,586	20,366
0051	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	1,185,248	1,185,248	1,239,698	(54,450)
0052	Security and Monitoring Services	-	-	1,453	(1,453)
0053	Data Processing Services	149,048	149,048	150,857	(1,809)
0061	Community Services	750	750	500	250
Debt Service:					
0071	Principal on Long-Term Debt	10	49,010	49,000	10
0072	Interest on Long-Term Debt	-	8,609	8,609	-
0073	Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	10	-	10
Capital Outlay:					
0081	Facilities Acquisition and Construction	11,900	11,900	10,600	1,300
Intergovernmental:					
0093	Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	250,405	250,405	262,108	(11,703)
0095	Payments to Juvenile Justice Alternative Ed. Prg.	11,000	11,000	27,001	(16,001)
0099	Other Intergovernmental Charges	67,145	67,145	68,802	(1,657)
6030	Total Expenditures	10,052,568	10,110,187	11,011,642	(901,455)
1100	Excess of Revenues Over Expenditures	823,593	766,079	780,189	14,110
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>					
7915	Transfers In	40	40	9,600	9,560
8911	Transfers Out (Use)	(50)	(60)	(467,768)	(467,708)
7080	Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	(10)	(20)	(458,168)	(458,148)
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	823,583	766,059	322,021	(444,038)
0100	Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	3,307,457	3,307,457	3,307,457	-
3000	Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 4,131,040	\$ 4,073,516	\$ 3,629,478	\$ (444,038)

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET PENSION LIABILITY  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

	FY 2018 Plan Year 2017	FY 2017 Plan Year 2016	FY 2016 Plan Year 2015	FY 2015 Plan Year 2014
District's Proportion of the Net Pension Liability (Asset)	0.004766041%	0.004995541%	0.0048639%	0.0021341%
District's Proportionate Share of Net Pension Liability (Asset)	\$ 1,523,923	\$ 1,887,741	\$ 1,719,324	\$ 570,048
State's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) Associated with the District	4,221,026	4,935,445	4,650,961	3,959,671
Total	<u>\$ 5,744,949</u>	<u>\$ 6,823,186</u>	<u>\$ 6,370,285</u>	<u>\$ 4,529,719</u>
District's Covered Payroll	\$ 7,174,631	\$ 6,955,925	\$ 6,485,164	\$ 6,246,529
District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) as a Percentage of its Covered Payroll	21.24%	27.14%	26.51%	9.13%
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of the Total Pension Liability	82.17%	78.00%	78.43%	83.25%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the information on this schedule be data from the period corresponding with the periods covered as of the measurement dates of August 31, 2017 for year 2018, August 31, 2016 for Year 2017, August 31, 2015 for Year 2016 and August 31, 2014 for 2015.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, only four years of data are presented this reporting period. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT'S CONTRIBUTIONS FOR PENSIONS  
 TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
 FOR FISCAL YEAR 2018

	2018	2017	2016	2015
Contractually Required Contribution	\$ 152,624	\$ 155,089	\$ 159,219	\$ 144,029
Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution	(152,624)	(155,089)	(159,219)	(144,029)
Contribution Deficiency (Excess)	\$ -0-	\$ -0-	\$ -0-	\$ -0-
District's Covered Payroll	\$ 7,131,629	\$ 7,174,631	\$ 6,955,925	\$ 6,485,164
Contributions as a Percentage of Covered Payroll	2.14%	2.16%	2.29%	2.22%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the data in this schedule be presented as of the District's respective fiscal years as opposed to the time periods covered by the measurement dates ending August 31 of the preceding year.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, only four years of data are presented this reporting period. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET OPEB LIABILITY  
 TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

	<u>FY 2018</u> <u>Plan Year 2017</u>
District's Proportion of the Net Liability (Asset) for Other Post Employment Benefits	0.007942857%
District's Proportionate Share of Net Post Employment Benefit Liability (Asset)	\$ 3,454,050
State's Proportionate Share of the Net Post Employment Benefit Liability (Asset) Associated with the District	5,836,601
Total	<u>\$ 9,290,651</u>
District's Covered Payroll	\$ 7,174,631
District's Proportionate Share of the Net OPEB Liability (Asset) as a Percentage of its Covered Payroll	48.14%
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of the Total OPEB Liability	0.91%

Note: GASB Codification, Vol. 2, P50.238 states that the information on this schedule should be determined as of the measurement date. Therefore the amounts reported for FY 2018 are based on the August 31, 2017 measurement date.

This schedule shows only the year for which this information is available. Additional information will be added until 10 years of data are available and reported.



ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT'S CONTRIBUTIONS FOR OTHER POSTEMPLOYMENT BENEFITS (OPEB)  
 TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
 FOR FISCAL YEAR 2018

	2018
Contractually Required Contribution	\$ 55,218
Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution	(55,218)
	\$ -0-
Contribution Deficiency (Excess)	-0-
District's Covered Payroll	\$ 7,131,629
Contributions as a Percentage of Covered Payroll	0.77%

Note: GASB Codification, Vol. 2, P50.238 requires that the data in this schedule be presented as of the District's respective fiscal years as opposed to the time periods covered by the measurement dates ending August 31 of the preceding year.

Information in this schedule should be provided only for the years where data is available. Eventually 10 years of data should be presented.

MASTER INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

**PENSIONS:**

**Changes of Benefit Terms**

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

**Changes of Assumptions**

There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions of other inputs that affected the measurement of the total pension liability during the prior measurement period.

**OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS:**

**Changes of Benefit Term**

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the Total OPEB liability during the measurement period.

**Changes of Assumptions**

There was a significant plan change adopted in fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. Effective January 1, 2018, only one health plan option will be offered and all retirees will be required to contribute monthly premiums for coverage. Assumption changes made for the August 31, 2017 valuation include a change to the assumption regarding the phase-out of the Medicare Part D subsidies and a change to the discount rate from 2.98% as of August 31, 2016 to 3.42% as of August 31, 2017.

## COMBINING STATEMENTS

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING BALANCE SHEET  
 NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes	211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	224 IDEA - Part B Formula	225 IDEA - Part B Preschool	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program	
<b>ASSETS</b>					
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 21,881	\$ (1,120)	\$ -	\$ 87,925
1240	Due from Other Governments	-	7,782	2,035	25,925
1260	Due from Other Funds	-	-	-	43,041
1000	Total Assets	<u>\$ 21,881</u>	<u>\$ 6,662</u>	<u>\$ 2,035</u>	<u>\$ 156,891</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>					
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	\$ 18,263	\$ 5,440	\$ 1,768	\$ -
2170	Due to Other Funds	1,787	1,106	232	148,214
2200	Accrued Expenditures	1,831	116	35	-
2300	Unearned Revenue	-	-	-	-
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>21,881</u>	<u>6,662</u>	<u>2,035</u>	<u>148,214</u>
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>					
Restricted Fund Balance:					
3450	Federal or State Funds Grant Restriction	-	-	-	8,677
Assigned Fund Balance:					
3590	Other Assigned Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000	Total Fund Balances	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>8,677</u>
4000	Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 21,881</u>	<u>\$ 6,662</u>	<u>\$ 2,035</u>	<u>\$ 156,891</u>

244 Career and Technical - Basic Grant	255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting	410 State Textbook Fund	429 Other State Grants	461 Campus Activity Funds	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ -	\$ -	\$ 5,453	\$ 16,217	\$ 70,362	\$ 200,718
-	-	-	-	-	35,742
-	-	-	-	-	43,041
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 5,453</u>	<u>\$ 16,217</u>	<u>\$ 70,362</u>	<u>\$ 279,501</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 25,471
-	-	-	33	-	151,372
-	-	-	-	-	1,982
-	-	-	13,532	-	13,532
<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>13,565</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>192,357</u>
-	-	5,453	2,652	-	16,782
-	-	-	-	70,362	70,362
<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>5,453</u>	<u>2,652</u>	<u>70,362</u>	<u>87,144</u>
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 5,453</u>	<u>\$ 16,217</u>	<u>\$ 70,362</u>	<u>\$ 279,501</u>

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN  
 FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes	211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	224 IDEA - Part B Formula	225 IDEA - Part B Preschool	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 131,095
5800 State Program Revenues	-	-	-	2,699
5900 Federal Program Revenues	167,480	118,384	23,343	407,596
5020 Total Revenues	<u>167,480</u>	<u>118,384</u>	<u>23,343</u>	<u>541,390</u>
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	167,480	118,384	23,343	-
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	-	-	-	-
0035 Food Services	-	-	-	547,418
0036 Extracurricular Activities	-	-	-	-
0052 Security and Monitoring Services	-	-	-	-
6030 Total Expenditures	<u>167,480</u>	<u>118,384</u>	<u>23,343</u>	<u>547,418</u>
1200 Net Change in Fund Balance	-	-	-	(6,028)
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	-	-	-	14,705
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 8,677</u>

244 Career and Technical - Basic Grant	255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting	410 State Textbook Fund	429 Other State Grants	461 Campus Activity Funds	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 113,453	\$ 244,548
-	-	88,201	6,468	-	97,368
58,001	32,777	-	-	-	807,581
58,001	32,777	88,201	6,468	113,453	1,149,497
58,001	-	82,748	-	-	449,956
-	32,777	-	-	-	32,777
-	-	-	-	-	547,418
-	-	-	-	97,802	97,802
-	-	-	6,468	-	6,468
58,001	32,777	82,748	6,468	97,802	1,134,421
-	-	5,453	-	15,651	15,076
-	-	-	2,652	54,711	72,068
\$ -	\$ -	\$ 5,453	\$ 2,652	\$ 70,362	\$ 87,144

## REQUIRED TEA SCHEDULES



ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Last 10 Years Ended August 31	(1)	(2)	(3)
	Tax Rates		Assessed/Appraised Value for School Tax Purposes
	Maintenance	Debt Service	
2009 and prior years	Various	Various	\$ Various
2010	1.170000	0.190000	234,284,044
2011	1.170000	0.190000	244,051,063
2012	1.170000	0.190000	258,707,404
2013	1.170000	0.190000	287,270,328
2014	1.170000	0.190000	285,476,163
2015	1.170000	0.190000	305,887,363
2016	1.170000	0.190000	264,768,065
2017	1.170000	0.190000	253,583,313
2018 (School year under audit)	1.170000	0.190000	272,824,192
1000 TOTALS			

(10) Beginning Balance 9/1/2017	(20) Current Year's Total Levy	(31) Maintenance Collections	(32) Debt Service Collections	(40) Entire Year's Adjustments	(50) Ending Balance 8/31/2018
\$ 125,311	\$ -	\$ 3,799	\$ 92	\$ (1,048)	\$ 120,372
25,168	-	780	127	(57)	24,204
29,894	-	1,484	241	(223)	27,946
37,154	-	3,030	492	(270)	33,362
38,549	-	1,982	322	(98)	36,147
59,940	-	6,371	1,035	(2,074)	50,460
68,588	-	7,409	1,203	(2,542)	57,434
99,521	-	12,972	2,106	(12,679)	71,764
149,091	-	29,408	4,776	(7,197)	107,710
-	3,710,409	3,053,400	495,912	(710)	160,387
<u>\$ 633,216</u>	<u>\$ 3,710,409</u>	<u>\$ 3,120,635</u>	<u>\$ 506,306</u>	<u>\$ (26,898)</u>	<u>\$ 689,786</u>

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
 BUDGET AND ACTUAL - CHILD NUTRITION PROGRAM  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)
	Original	Final		
REVENUES:				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 154,013	\$ 154,013	\$ 131,095	\$ (22,918)
5800 State Program Revenues	2,673	2,673	2,699	26
5900 Federal Program Revenues	374,623	374,623	407,596	32,973
5020 Total Revenues	531,309	531,309	541,390	10,081
EXPENDITURES:				
0035 Food Services	530,347	530,347	547,418	(17,071)
6030 Total Expenditures	530,347	530,347	547,418	(17,071)
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	962	962	(6,028)	(6,990)
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):				
7915 Transfers In	10	10	-	(10)
1200 Net Change in Fund Balances	972	972	(6,028)	(7,000)
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	14,705	14,705	14,705	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 15,677	\$ 15,677	\$ 8,677	\$ (7,000)

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
 BUDGET AND ACTUAL - DEBT SERVICE FUND  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)	
	Original	Final			
REVENUES:					
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 470,600	\$ 470,600	\$ 524,413	\$ 53,813
5800	State Program Revenues	253,202	253,202	297,059	43,857
5020	Total Revenues	723,802	723,802	821,472	97,670
EXPENDITURES:					
Debt Service:					
0071	Principal on Long-Term Debt	355,000	355,000	355,000	-
0072	Interest on Long-Term Debt	704,022	704,022	617,831	86,191
0073	Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	-	500	(500)
6030	Total Expenditures	1,059,022	1,059,022	973,331	85,691
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	(335,220)	(335,220)	(151,859)	183,361
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):					
7915	Transfers In	335,220	335,220	458,168	122,948
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	-	-	306,309	306,309
0100	Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	47,085	47,085	47,085	-
3000	Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 47,085	\$ 47,085	\$ 353,394	\$ 306,309

COMPLIANCE, INTERNAL CONTROL AND FEDERAL AWARDS

**SMITH, LAMBRIGHT & ASSOCIATES, P.C.**  
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

Marlin R. Smith, CPA  
J. W. Lambright, CPA

Cheri E. Kirkland, CPA  
David N. Hopkins, CPA

P. O. Box 912  
505 E. Tyler  
Athens, Texas 75751  
(903) 675-5674  
FAX (903) 675-5676  
smithlambright.com

**Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an  
Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with *Government Auditing Standards***

**Independent Auditor's Report**

Board of School Trustees  
Elkhart Independent School District  
301 East Parker  
Elkhart, Texas 75839

We have audited, in accordance with the auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund and the aggregate remaining fund information of the District as of and for the year ended August 31, 2018 and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated February 25, 2019.

**Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered the District's internal control over financial reporting (internal controls) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinion on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control.

A *deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A *material weakness* is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the District's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

## **Compliance and Other Matters**

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether the District's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit and, accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed an instance of noncompliance or other matters that is required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*, and which is described in the accompanying Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs as Reference Number 2018-1.

## **District's Response to Findings**

The District's response to the finding identified in our audit is described in the accompanying schedule of findings and questioned costs. The District's response was not subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the financial statements and accordingly, we express no opinion on it.

## **Purpose of this Report**

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the entity's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.

Respectfully submitted,

SMITH, LAMBRIGHT & ASSOCIATES, P. C.  
Certified Public Accountants  
Athens, Texas

February 25, 2019

**SMITH, LAMBRIGHT & ASSOCIATES, P.C.**  
**CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS**

Marlin R. Smith, CPA  
J. W. Lambright, CPA  

---

Cheri E. Kirkland, CPA  
David N. Hopkins, CPA

P. O. Box 912  
505 E. Tyler  
Athens, Texas 75751  
(903) 675-5674  
FAX (903) 675-5676  
smithlambright.com

**Report on Compliance For Each Major Federal Program; Report on Internal Control Over Compliance;  
and Report on the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards Required by the Uniform Guidance**

**Independent Auditor's Report**

Board of School Trustees  
Elkhart Independent School District  
301 East Parker  
Elkhart, Texas 75839

**Report on Compliance for Each Major Federal Program**

We have audited the District's compliance with the types of compliance requirements described in the *OMB Compliance Supplement* that could have a direct and material effect on each of the District's major federal programs for the year ended August 31, 2018. The District's major federal programs are identified in the summary of auditor's results section of the accompanying schedule of findings and questioned costs.

***Management's Responsibility***

Management is responsible for compliance with federal statutes, regulations, and the terms and conditions of its federal awards applicable to its federal programs.

***Auditor's Responsibility***

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on compliance for each of the District's major federal programs based on our audit of the types of compliance requirements referred to above. We conducted our audit of compliance in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America; the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States; and the audit requirements of *Title 2 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 200, Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards* (Uniform Guidance). Those standards and the Uniform Guidance require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether noncompliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on a major federal program occurred. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence about the District's compliance with those requirements and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances.

We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion on compliance for each major federal program. However, our audit does not provide a legal determination on the District's compliance.

***Opinion on Each Major Federal Program***

In our opinion, the District complied, in all material respects, with the types of compliance requirements referred to above that could have a direct and material effect on each of its major federal programs for the year ended August 31, 2018.



## Report on Internal Control Over Compliance

Management of the District is responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance with the types of compliance requirements referred to above. In planning and performing our audit of compliance, we considered the District's internal control over compliance with the types of requirements that could have a direct and material effect on each major federal program to determine the auditing procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing an opinion on compliance for each major federal program and to test and report on internal control over compliance in accordance with the Uniform Guidance, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control over compliance. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control over compliance.

*A deficiency in internal control over compliance* exists when the design or operation of a control over compliance does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program on a timely basis. *A material weakness in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance, such that there is a reasonable possibility that material noncompliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis. *A significant deficiency in internal control over compliance* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over compliance with a type of compliance requirement of a federal program that is less severe than a material weakness in internal control over compliance, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control over compliance was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control over compliance that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. We did not identify any deficiencies in internal control over compliance that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

The purpose of this report on internal control over compliance is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over compliance and the results of that testing based on the requirements of the Uniform Guidance. Accordingly, this report is not suitable for any other purpose.

Respectfully submitted,

SMITH, LAMBRIGHT & ASSOCIATES, P. C.  
Certified Public Accountants  
Athens, Texas

February 25, 2019

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

I. Summary of Auditor's Results

Financial Statements:

Type of auditor's report issued: Unmodified

Internal control over financial reporting:

- Material weakness(es) identified? \_\_\_\_\_ yes  X  no
- Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses? \_\_\_\_\_ yes  X  none reported

Noncompliance material to financial statements noted? \_\_\_\_\_ yes  X  no

Federal Awards:

Internal control over major programs:

- Material weakness(es) identified? \_\_\_\_\_ yes  X  no
- Significant deficiency(ies) identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses? \_\_\_\_\_ yes  X  none reported

Type of auditor's report issued on compliance for major programs: Unmodified

Any audit findings disclosed that are required to be reported in accordance with Title 2 CFR 200.516(a) \_\_\_\_\_ yes  X  no

Identification of major programs:

CFDA Number	Name of Federal Program or Cluster
	Child Nutrition Cluster
10.553	School Breakfast Program
10.555	National School Lunch Program

Dollar threshold used to distinguish between Type A and Type B programs: \$ 750,000

Auditee qualified as low risk auditee? \_\_\_\_\_ yes  X  no

District Contact Person Lamont Smith, Ed.D.  
Superintendent

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS (Continued)  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

II. Financial Statement Findings

Reference Number 2018-1

Bank Depository

Criteria: The Depository Contract Law requires that funds of the District must be fully insured by FDIC or pledged securities.

Condition: The District's funds at the depository bank were not fully secured by pledged securities at the depository bank.

Context: During the audit of the compliance with the Depository Contract Law, it was noted that the District's combined funds on deposit at the depository bank were not fully insured by FDIC or pledged securities for part of January and February of the fiscal year.

Cause: The amount of the bank balance was not fully monitored in order to timely respond to the need for additional pledged securities.

Effect: District funds were not fully insured at the depository bank for part of January and February of the fiscal year.

Recommendation / Action Taken:

Timely monitor the balance of funds at the depository bank in order to pledge additional securities when necessary.

The bank had pledged additional securities in February, 2018. With the pledge of additional securities, District funds were adequately secured for the remainder of the year.

District's Response:

The District concurs with the finding.

III. Federal Awards Findings and Questioned Costs

The audit disclosed no finding required to be reported.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SUMMARY SCHEDULE OF PRIOR AUDIT FINDINGS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

N/A

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CORRECTIVE ACTION PLAN  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

Reference Number 2018-1:

Bank Depository

Additional securities were pledged in February, 2018 to fully cover the funds on deposit for the remainder of the year.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)
FEDERAL GRANTOR/ PASS-THROUGH GRANTOR/ PROGRAM or CLUSTER TITLE	Federal CFDA Number	Pass-Through Entity Identifying Number	Federal Expenditures
<b>U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION</b>			
<u>Passed Through State Department of Education</u>			
ESEA, Title I, Part A - Improving Basic Programs	84.010A	18-610101001903	\$ 167,480
*IDEA - Part B, Formula	84.027	18-660001001902	118,384
*IDEA - Part B, Preschool	84.173	18-661001001902	23,343
Total Special Education Cluster (IDEA)			141,727
Career and Technical - Basic Grant	84.048	18-4200547110004	58,001
ESEA, Title II, Part A, Supporting Effective Instr	84.367A	18-694501001903	32,777
Total Passed Through State Department of Education			399,985
<b>TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION</b>			399,985
<b>U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE</b>			
<u>Passed Through the State Department of Agriculture</u>			
**School Breakfast Program	10.553		85,810
**National School Lunch Program-Cash Assistance	10.555		274,629
**National School Lunch Prog.-Non-Cash Assistance	10.555		47,157
Total CFDA Number 10.555			321,786
Total Child Nutrition Cluster			407,596
Total Passed Through the State Department of Agriculture			407,596
<b>TOTAL U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE</b>			407,596
<b>TOTAL EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS</b>			\$ 807,581

\*Clustered Programs

\*\*Clustered Programs

Note A - Funds received from the ESC Region 7 for Head Start reimbursements of \$11,774 are included in the General Fund and are not considered as federal financial assistance for purposes of this schedule. The program is reported as a federal program of ESC Region 7.

ELKHART INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE SCHEDULE OF EXPENDITURES OF FEDERAL AWARDS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2018

- For all Federal programs, the District uses the fund types specified in Texas Education Agency’s *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide*. Special revenue funds are used to account for resources restricted to, or designated for, specific purposes by a grantor. Federal and state financial assistance generally is accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund.
- The accounting and financial reporting treatment applied to a fund is determined by its measurement focus. The Governmental Fund types are accounted for using a current financial resources measurement focus. All Federal grant funds were accounted for in the General Fund or in a Special Revenue Fund which are Governmental Fund types.

With this measurement focus, only current assets and current liabilities and the fund balance are included on the balance sheet. Operating statements of these funds present increases and decreases in net current assets. The modified accrual basis of accounting is used for the Governmental Fund types. This basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they become susceptible to accrual, i.e., both measurable and available, and expenditures in the accounting period in which the fund liability is incurred, if measurable, except for unmatured interest on General Long-Term Debt, which is recognized when due, and certain compensated absences and claims and judgments, which are recognized when the obligations are expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

Federal grant funds are considered to be earned to the extent of expenditures made under the provisions of the grant, and, accordingly, when such funds are received, they are recorded as deferred revenues until earned.

- The period of availability for federal grant funds for the purpose of liquidation of outstanding obligations made on or before the ending date of the federal project period extended 30 days beyond the federal project period ending date, in accordance with provisions of the Period of Availability of Federal Funds.
- The National School Breakfast and Lunch Programs and the USDA donated commodities are accounted for in the nonmajor governmental funds. The Impact Aid, if any, is accounted for in the General Fund. Expenditures are not specifically attributable to these revenue sources and are shown on this schedule in an amount equal to revenue for balancing purposes only. The revenue for indirect costs is recognized in the General Fund.
- The expenditures shown on the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards (SEFA) does not equal to total federal revenues shown on Exhibit C-3 by the amount of federal revenue recorded in various funds as shown below. These amounts are not subject to the Single Audit Act and are not required to be included in the SEFA.

Amount reported on the Schedule of Expenditures of Federal Awards \$	807 581
ESC Region 7 Head Start reimbursement	11 774
Federal Program Revenue Reported on Exhibit C-3	\$ 819 355

**SMITH, LAMBRIGHT & ASSOCIATES, P.C.**  
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

Marlin R. Smith, CPA  
J. W. Lambright, CPA

Cheri E. Kirkland, CPA  
David N. Hopkins, CPA

P. O. Box 912  
505 E. Tyler  
Athens, Texas 75751  
(903) 675-5674  
FAX (903) 675-5676  
smithlambright.com

COMMUNICATION WITH THOSE CHARGED WITH GOVERNANCE

Board of School Trustees  
Elkhart Independent School District  
301 East Parker  
Elkhart, Texas 75839

Members of the Board:

We have audited the financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of the District for the year ended August 31, 2018. Professional standards require that we provide you with information about our responsibilities under generally accepted auditing standards and, when applicable, *Government Auditing Standards* and OMB Circular A-133, as well as certain information related to the planned scope and timing of our audit. We have communicated such information in our letter to you dated February 13, 2018. Professional standards also require that we communicate to you the following information related to our audit.

Qualitative Aspects of Accounting Practices

Management is responsible for the selection and use of appropriate accounting policies. The significant accounting policies used by the District are described in Note 1 to the financial statements. No new accounting policies were adopted and the application of existing policies was not changed during the year. We noted no transactions entered into by the District during the year for which there is a lack of authoritative guidance or consensus. All significant transactions have been recognized in the financial statements in the proper period.

Accounting estimates are an integral part of the financial statements prepared by management and are based on management's knowledge and experience about past and current events and assumptions about future events. Certain accounting estimates are particularly sensitive because of their significance to the financial statements and because of the possibility that future events affecting them may differ significantly from those expected. The most significant estimates affecting the financial statements were:

Managements estimate of the uncollectible accounts and accumulated depreciation. We evaluated the key factors and assumptions used to develop these estimates in determining that it is reasonable in relation to the financial statements taken as a whole.

Difficulties Encountered in Performing the Audit

We encountered no difficulties in dealing with management in performing and completing our audit.

Audit Differences and Misstatements

Professional standards require us to accumulate all known and likely misstatements identified during the audit, other than those that are trivial, and communicate them to the appropriate level of management. Management has corrected all such misstatements. In addition, none of the misstatements detected as a result of audit procedures and corrected by management were material, either individually or in the aggregate, to the financial statements taken as a whole.



### Disagreements with Management

For purposes of this letter, a disagreement with management is a financial accounting, reporting, or auditing matter, whether or not resolved to our satisfaction, that could be significant to the financial statements or the auditor's report. We are pleased to report that no such disagreements arose during the course of our audit.

### Management Representations

We have requested certain representations from management that are included in the management representation letter.

### Management Consultations with Other Independent Accountants

In some cases, management may decide to consult with other accountants about auditing and accounting matters, similar to obtaining a "second opinion" on certain situations. If a consultation involves application of an accounting principle to the District's financial statements or a determination of the type of auditor's opinion that may be expressed on those statements, our professional standards require the consulting accountant to check with us to determine that the consultant has all the relevant facts. To our knowledge, there were no such consultations with other accountants.

### Issues Discussed Prior to Retention of Independent Auditors

We generally discuss a variety of matters, including the application of accounting principles and auditing standards, with management each year prior to retention as the District's auditors. However, these discussions occurred in the normal course of our professional relationship and our responses were not a condition to our retention.

### Supplementary Information

We applied certain limited procedures to the management's discussion and analysis which is required supplementary information (RSI) that supplements the basic financial statements. Our procedures consisted of inquiries of management regarding the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We did not audit this RSI and do not express an opinion or provide any assurance of the RSI.

We were engaged to report on other RSI and other information which accompany the financial statements. With respect to this supplementary information, we made certain inquiries of management and evaluated the form, content, and methods of preparing the information to determine that the information complies with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, the method of preparing it has not changed from the prior period, and the information is appropriate and complete in relation to our audit of the financial statements. We compared and reconciled the other RSI and other information to the underlying accounting records used to prepare the financial statements or to the financial statement themselves.

### General Audit Comments, Findings or Issues

In connection with the annual audit of the records of the Elkhart Independent School District as of August 31, 2018, we offer the following additional comments:

#### General Accounting:

The accounting records and bank reconciliations had not been fully completed by the beginning date of the audit. We continued to do as much audit work as possible. We reviewed account balances and made analytical tests. We analyzed state and federal revenue and tax collections, which are documented by TEA and the County tax office. We performed procedures related to payroll, invoice testing and various other tests. From these procedures, we noted that many transactions had not been entered on the accounting records, and the bank accounts had not been reconciled for much of the fiscal year. We recommended that the District, possibly with the assistance of a consultant, continue to complete the accounting records and reconcile all bank accounts before we continued. We were in contact with the District during this time for any assistance needed. When the accounting was completed, we then received a revised trial balance from which to continue our work. We made adjusting and correcting entries to arrive at the audited financial records.

Compliance:

The District's funds on deposit at the depository bank were not fully insured by FDIC coverage and/or pledged securities for part of January and February, 2018. Additional funds were pledged by the depository bank in February, 2018 to adequate secure your funds for the remainder of the year.

Budget:

We noted that the District made expenditures in excess of the budget amounts in functional areas of the General Fund and the Child Nutrition Fund. The District should more closely review planned expenditures, and make budget amendments to make certain that all expenditures are within the approved budget prior to the expenditure of funds.

Capital Assets and Depreciation:

The capital assets and depreciation calculations had not been completed at the time of the audit. This was prepared later and provided to the auditors for audit.

Interfund Receivables and Payables:

Review each of these balances monthly and move funds to satisfy the accounts. Preferably, the balances should clear each month,.

Campus and Student Activity Funds:

For the most part, no receipts were available for review. We have provided a form that can be used to document the receipt of funds. Each receipt and disbursement should be entered on the accounting records.

Federal Funds Reimbursement Requests:

Make timely requests for reimbursement for the various federal funds. Review the approved allocations and budget your expenditures accordingly to maximize your federal funds.

Special Education Maintenance of Effort:

The District should review the calculation of the special education maintenance of effort to make sure that the District is in compliance.

This information is intended solely for the use of those charged with governance, including the audit committee, Board of Trustees and management, and is not intended to be, and should not be, used by anyone other than these specified parties.

Respectfully submitted,

SMITH, LAMBRIGHT & ASSOCIATES, P. C.  
Certified Public Accountants

February 25, 2019

Financial Advisory Services  
Provided By:

